THE CAMBRIDGE SERIES FOR SCHOOLS AND TRAINING COLLEGES

CAESAR

DE BELLO GALLICO I

WITH VOCABULARY

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

The Cambridge Series
for
Schools and Training Colleges

GAI IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
LIBER I

London: C. J. CLAY AND SONS,
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,
AVE MARIA LANE.
Glasgow: 50, WELLINGTON STREET.

Leipzig: F. A. BROCKHAUS.
New York: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.



Cambridge, University Press.

GAI IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
LIBER I

EDITED

WITH NOTES AND VOCABULARY FOR BEGINNERS

BY

E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

LATE FELLOW AND ASSISTANT TUTOR OF
EMMANUEL COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

CAMBRIDGE:
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

1901

Cambridge:
PRINTED BY J. AND C. F. CLAY,
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

PREFACE.

THE first twenty-nine chapters of this Book (the Helvetian War) were published in 1896. An edition of the whole Book is now presented on the same lines as the first part. The Vocabulary is designed for the use of Beginners; others will still use their Dictionary. Help is given in all that seemed difficult, and the young student is constantly referred to his Grammar. For that purpose the *Revised Latin Primer* is taken as being most widely in use. Those who use other Grammars will not have much difficulty in applying to them for the simple rules needed.

CAMBRIDGE.
1 *October* 1901.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

THE writer of the *Commentaries* is himself the chief hero of the story. Though he always speaks of himself in the third person, the commander in the 9 years' war in Gaul and the historian of the campaigns are the same person. This was Gaius Iulius Caesar. He was a member of a patrician family



belonging to the ancient and illustrious *gens Iulia*, which was said to be descended from Iulus son of Aeneas. Born in B.C. 101 he very early shewed that he was brave and determined. C. Marius, the leader of the popular party and opponent of Sulla, married his aunt, and he himself from the first attached himself to the popular party and married the daughter of L. Cinna, who led the opposition to Sulla after the death of Marius. Sulla ordered him to divorce this wife, but he refused and in consequence barely escaped being put to

death. He had to remain away from Rome till after Sulla's death in B.C. 78. After that event he returned to Rome and speedily made himself conspicuous by his skill as an orator while accusing several leading men of extortion in their provinces.

Caesar's offices, B.C. 69—59.

As soon as he reached the legal age he was elected to the quaestorship (B.C. 68) which gave a seat in the Senate and was the first step in the scale of promotion to the higher magistracies. He served as quaestor under the governor of further Spain. After this he married a connexion of Pompey, Pompeia, daughter of Q. Pompeius Rufus, and attached himself closely to Pompey, who was afterwards to be his great rival and enemy. He helped to get the command first against the pirates and then against Mithridates for Pompey, who was thus kept in the East from B.C. 67 to B.C. 62. While Pompey was away Caesar was steadily rising in power and influence. In B.C. 65 he was Aedile and spent so much money on the shows and games of which the Aedile had the charge, as well as on the repair of the *via Appia*, the care of which he held in the previous year, that he became deeply in debt. He was elected praetor for B.C. 62; and after his year of office went as propraetor to farther Spain (B.C. 61—60). Here he first seems to have discovered his genius for military command. Southern Spain was generally in a very disturbed state, and Caesar not only put down disorder in it, but also conquered the Lusitani, who were continually plundering the Roman province or allies. In this Spanish government he made a great deal of money (often it seems by very doubtful means) and when he returned to Rome in B.C. 60 to stand for the consulship he seems at any rate to have been free from debt.

Caesar head of the Populares. The triumvirate.

Besides holding the offices above named he had throughout been forward in supporting all the measures which the popular party wished for,—whether in regard to the public land, or the punishment of those of the party of Sulla who were still alive and had been involved in the proscription and death of innocent citizens during Sulla's supremacy. This policy

carried out with boldness, combined with the military reputation gained in Spain, placed Caesar clearly at the head of the popular party. The Senatorial or aristocratic party did their best to thwart him. It was a rule at Rome that a man who claimed a triumph (as Caesar did for his actions in Spain) must retain his *imperium* until the Senate had decided whether he was to have his triumph or not. If he entered the *pomœrium* (that is, the space round the old walls of Rome) he thereby gave up this *imperium*, and could no longer claim a triumph. There was also another rule, that when a man was a candidate for the consulship he must make a declaration in the city that he was so (called a *professio*) three weeks before the date of election. Now Caesar had come back so near the time when this declaration was required, that unless the Senate would excuse him from making it (as was sometimes done) he would have to give up either his triumph or his consulship. His application to be excused the declaration was successfully opposed by his political enemies, headed by Cato (afterwards called Cato Uticensis from the place of his death), and therefore Caesar gave up the triumph, made his declaration, and was elected consul for B.C. 59 about July B.C. 60. But this made him more opposed than ever to the Aristocratic party: and finding Pompey also offended with the Senate, because the same party in it were making difficulties about confirming his arrangements in the East, and about giving his veterans grants of land, he made an agreement with him and the richest man in the state, M. Licinius Crassus, whereby the three were to combine to get the measures they wished for passed by the people and to secure for each other or their adherents certain offices. This is called the *First Triumvirate*, and though it was not, like the Decemvirate or the Second Triumvirate, a legally established commission, it exercised great influence in politics, and its breaking up led to the civil war.

Caesar Consul, B.C. 59.

Caesar was Consul then in B.C. 59. The aristocratic party had been able, as they thought, to hamper his actions by giving him a colleague, M. Bibulus, who belonged to their own party and was expected to oppose him in

every way. But Caesar was not a man to be so easily beaten. He reduced his colleague to complete impotence, carried the measures he intended in the comitia, seldom summoning or consulting the Senate, and finally obtained for five years the province which he wished to have, by means of a law proposed by a Tribune, P. Vatinius. This was Gallia Cisalpina with Illyricum annexed. He was not however satisfied with this, for Gallia Cisalpina was now almost a part of Italy though still governed as a province. He wished to have also the province of Gallia Transalpina, where there was likely to be much more opportunity of active work: and the Senate fearing that, if they refused him, he would cause another law to be passed, assigned this also to him for five years, on the motion of Pompey, along with a separate army required to protect it.

Let us see first what it was that Caesar was to govern.

Caesar's Provinces: (1) Gallia Cisalpina.

I. Gallia Cisalpina. This would now be called North Italy, consisting of all that lay between the Rubicon and the Alps, divided nearly in half by the river Po. From about B.C. 181 this country had been treated as a 'province' or sometimes two provinces (Cispadana and Transpadana), but was yet not quite like other provinces. It contained a good many Roman colonies for one thing, and again after the Social War all the people of Cispadane Gaul had the full Roman franchise, those of the Transpadane district only having a partial citizenship called Latinitas. Thus it was much more like a part of Italy than a province, and the governor would have rather different things to do from the governor of one of the more distant provinces. There was an army of three legions, in winter-quarters at Aquileia, ready for his use: but its position seems to show that he expected to use it in Illyricum rather than in Cisalpine Gaul.

(2) Illyricum.

II. To Cisalpine Gaul we have seen that the law added Illyricum to Caesar's government. By Illyricum was meant a narrow strip of country on the East of the Adriatic including Istria and Dalmatia. It had been under the control of Rome since B.C. 228, but had never been fully organised, sometimes being put under the governor of

Macedonia, at others under the governor of Gallia Cisalpina, sometimes being left nominally free on payment of tribute. But it was often in rebellion itself, and besides was subject to attacks from neighbouring barbarians, and therefore Roman arms and magistrates were in the country at frequent intervals. As a matter of fact it was peaceful during Caesar's nine years' government, and he only visited it to hold the *conventus* or assizes.

III. Gallia Transalpina. At this time the Roman province across the Alps was confined to the South-Eastern district of France, which in consequence still retains the name of *Provence*. It was bounded on the East by the Alps, on the North by the Rhone from the lake of Geneva to Vienne, on the West by the Cevennes and the Upper Garonne, on the South by the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean. It was constituted a province in B.C. 118 and was very important to the Romans both as securing the road to Spain and as barring the road against incursions of barbarians into Italy. It had however been in danger more than once from the Cimbri and Teutones, who invaded it in B.C. 105, and from rebellions of the Allobroges, the most Northern tribe in it, in B.C. 65 and 61. When Caesar first undertook this province it seemed peaceful enough, but there were likely to be difficulties in non-Roman or Celtic Gallia with which he would have to deal; and before he had actually started for his province this was made clear.

(3) Gallia Transalpina.

What Caesar was to govern then included but a small portion of what was called Gallia. The rest, which included the great part of what is now called France and Belgium, was still free from Roman government. Caesar regards it as falling into three divisions: Aquitania in the South-West from the Pyrenees to the Garonne; Celtic Gaul, the great central block of France from the Garonne to the Seine, with western Switzerland; and Belgica from the Seine to the lower Rhine, thus including Northern France, Belgium and Southern Holland. The various tribes inhabiting these three divisions were probably all what is called Celtic, but

Gaul.

in the South-West (Aquitania) there was a mixture of Iberians from Spain, and, on the North, of Germans.

State of things in non-Roman Gaul.

Though the Romans had not conquered this greater Gaul they were already in communication with it, and had been asked to side with one or another tribe in the quarrels which frequently occurred between them. Thus the Aedui, of whom we hear so much in these chapters, living between the Loire and the Saône, had some years before (perhaps as early as B.C. 121) become the 'friends and allies' of Rome in order to secure protection from the Sequăni, who were separated from them by the Saône. When the Romans declared a people their 'friends and allies' they in a manner pledged themselves to protect them if attacked, and it too often happened that in the end such people became their subjects. But up to this time since B.C. 100 there had been so much trouble at Rome that affairs in Gaul had been a good deal overlooked.

Germans in Gaul.

The enemies of the Aedui—the Sequăni and Arverni—combined to seek help against them from Germany beyond the Rhine. In vain the Aedui sent to Rome for help. Ariovistus, with a large army of Germans, conquered the Aedui and forced them to give hostages to the Sequăni. These latter however suffered from their champions even more than the Aedui: for the Germans, whose numbers were constantly being increased by fresh arrivals, attracted by the account of the beauty and fertility of the country, occupied a considerable part of the territory of the Sequăni, and seemed likely to extend their influence farther and farther. Ariovistus even negociated with Rome, and during Caesar's consulship (B.C. 59) found means to get recognised as king and ally. The Romans therefore had, it seems, determined to accept the actual state of affairs. The application of Ariovistus was in itself an admission of their virtual supremacy, and until his actions should appear to threaten the peace of Gaul or the safety of the province they would not interfere. Caesar therefore had no particular reason to suppose that he would be called upon to take active steps



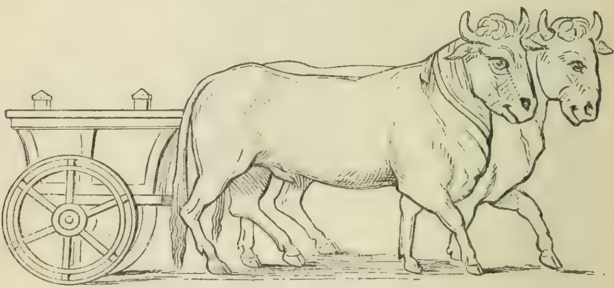
A Gallic Chief.

in the affairs of Gaul or go beyond the limits of the province in arms, though a vote of the Senate in B.C. 61 (when there were rumours of a threatened movement of the Helvetii) had granted to the governor of the Transalpine province, whoever he might be, power to do whatever seemed for the good of the Republic. He would be justified therefore in leaving his province and invading Celtic Gaul, if he thought it right, without farther orders from the Senate.

Special position of the governor of Gaul.

But before he had started for Gaul news came to Rome which shewed him that he would have to act at once. The Helvetii lived in Western Switzerland in a somewhat narrow district between Bâsle and Geneva. That country, now a beautiful and fertile one, was then probably much covered with forest and marsh. The Helvetii had outgrown, or thought they had outgrown their territory, and had for some time been preparing to migrate *en masse* to a better country. Rumours of this had reached Rome three years before (B.C. 61) and it was uncertain whether they meant to go westward into Aquitania or eastward into Italy. In either case they would most easily effect their purpose by

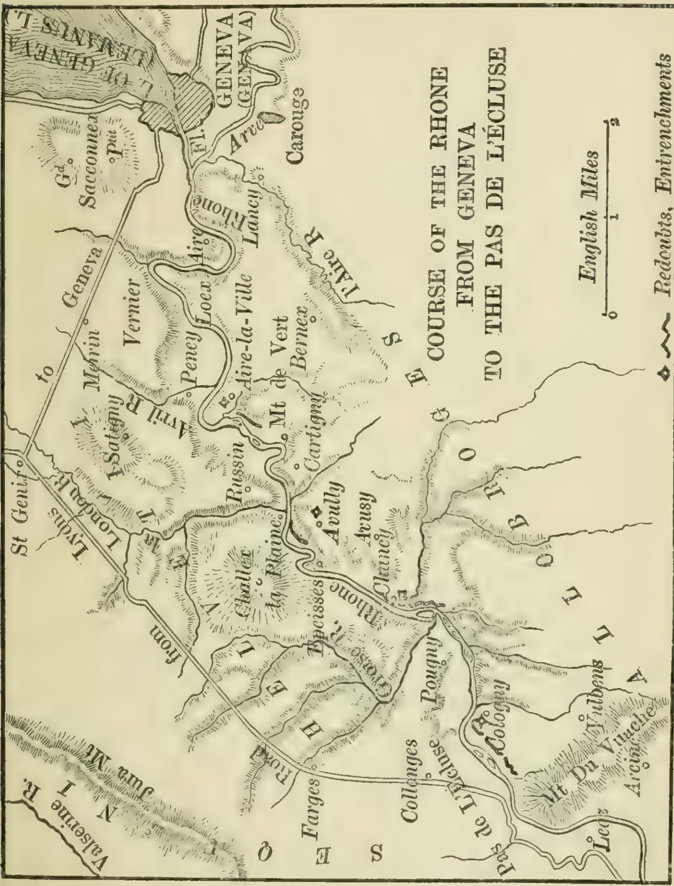
The Helvetii.



A *carrus* or Gallic waggon.

crossing the Rhone by the bridge at Geneva and marching through the Roman province. This operation did not take place in B.C. 61 because they were delayed by the treason of their chief, Orgetorix. But while Caesar was still outside

Rome preparing to go to his province news came that the



migration was actually beginning. The Helvetii had burnt their villages, prepared their supplies of corn and their train of

waggons, and had fixed on the 28th of March as the day on which the whole nation, men, women and children, were to set out.

Caesar's promptitude in meeting the danger.

The Romans had some cause to fear the Helvetii. One of their Cantons, the Tigurini, had helped the Cimbri to defeat a Roman army in B.C. 107. If allowed to cross the Rhone into the province they would be passing through the territories of the Allobroges, the most disaffected tribe in the province; and if they reached their destination and settled in Aquitania they would be on the Western frontier of the province, which was practically undefended. Even if, instead of the easier route along the left bank of the Rhone, they took the more difficult one from the right bank through the territory of the Sequăni, they would be among a tribe hostile to Rome, in a country where the influence of the German Ariovistus was paramount. Lastly their abandoned territory would in all likelihood be occupied by fresh German immigrations, dangerous as neighbours of the Province. On all accounts then Caesar was resolved to prevent the movement. He reached Geneva in a week from Rome in the spring of B.C. 58. There was only one legion (the 10th) in the province, and Caesar at once began raising large bodies of auxiliary troops within it. He also broke down the bridge over the Rhone, and prevented the Helvetii crossing any ford lower down by constructing an earthen rampart and ditch along its left bank wherever a passage was practicable, down to the point where the Jura comes close to the river and makes farther advance along the right bank impossible for a host of 300,000 people with their train of waggons. Beyond this the Rhone is not fordable. The Helvetii made some attempts to force the passage of the river above L'Écluse, but failing to effect it, turned to the North-West into the territory of the Sequăni, whose hostility to Rome prompted them to allow the host free passage. But it was a much more difficult route, and the vast host of warriors and their families necessarily advanced very slowly. Caesar had time, leaving Labienus in charge of the earthwork, to hurry into Cisalpine Gaul, summon

the three legions from Aquileia (7th, 8th, 9th) and enrol two fresh ones (11th and 12th), and yet catch up the Helvetii while only partly across the Arar (*Saône*). How he there cut to pieces the Tigurini, and following the rest as far as Bibracte (*Autun*) again defeated them with great slaughter, so that less than half of the whole host survived to be sent back to their old territory, is told in the first twenty-nine chapters of this book.

The Germans in Gaul.

The result of the victory over the Helvetii was to make Caesar the most important person in Gaul, to whom all disputes between the various tribes would be certain to be referred. In fact a great question was immediately brought before him and he was requested to summon a meeting of chiefs to consider it. Some years before this time—as we have already said—the Arverni and Sequani had a quarrel with the Aedui, who had a special connexion with the Romans. To assist them against the Aedui the Arverni and Sequani had invited the assistance of some Germans from across the Rhine. They came, to the number of 15,000, under the command of a chief named Ariovistus, and by their assistance the Aedui were defeated again and again and forced to give hostages for their submission to the superior authority of the Sequani. But the Germans had found the climate and fertility of central Gaul much more attractive than the colder and bleaker regions from which they had come, and had exacted from the Sequani a third of their territory in which to make a permanent settlement. The Roman government about this time had a good deal of trouble in the 'Province' with the Allobroges, and though the governors of the province were commissioned to take any steps in Celtic Gaul which they thought for the good of the republic, it does not appear that any of them had found leisure to interfere with this settlement of Germans, which was gradually swollen to 150,000, as the various German tribes heard of the success of the first settlers, and kept crossing the Rhine in hopes of sharing in rich and pleasant lands. The Roman Senate seems to have acquiesced in the inevitable: and in B.C. 59 it formally recognised Ariovistus as king and

gave him the title of 'friend.' But the representations made by the assembled chiefs to Caesar put a new light on the matter. The Germans were always increasing in number by fresh migrations, and their demands for lands were always extending. They already had one-third of the Sequanian territory, they were now demanding another third; and the Gallic chiefs believed that Ariovistus—whom they accused of overbearing tyranny and cruelty—would gradually lay claim to supremacy in all Gaul, and that the natives would soon be expelled from their lands or be forced to serve as slaves where they had been free owners.

Proposed negotiations with Ariovistus.

Caesar reflected on the alarm caused to Italy fifty years before by the invading hordes of Cimbri and Teutones; and he came to the conclusion that similar danger might arise again, if the Germans were allowed to overrun Gaul. He therefore proposed an interview with Ariovistus to discuss matters of weight and importance. Ariovistus however well knew the object of the proposed interview; and he knew also that there was a strong party at Rome who disliked Caesar and wished him to fail in Gaul. He was confident too in his own fighting strength, which had given him so many victories over the Gauls. He therefore not only refused the interview in haughty terms, but told a second embassy that Caesar was the aggressor and that he was ready to fight him. But Caesar anticipated him in seizing Vesontio (*Besançon*), and after quelling a panic in his army, which was terrified at the prospect of advancing through a wild and unknown country to meet so formidable an enemy, he advanced within a few miles of the German camp. Ariovistus then consented to an interview. But it did not lead to peace. The king would not listen to Caesar's demands that he should refrain from attacking the Aedui, should restore their hostages, and if he could not send the Germans already in Gaul home, should at least refrain from bringing any more over the Rhine. Ariovistus claimed in reply a superior right in Gaul to that of the Romans. He asserted that Caesar was invading what were already his own possessions; that unless Caesar withdrew from

them he would fight him, and knew that in doing so he would be pleasing many men of high position in Rome. Finally the conference was broken off by signs of treachery on the part of the German army, which might have been dangerous to Caesar's person if he had not made careful provision to secure his safety. Two days afterwards Ariovistus, who seems to have wanted delay, proposed another interview. This Caesar declined, but sent envoys whom Ariovistus arrested and kept in chains. Then followed various skirmishes between the cavalry of the two armies. Ariovistus was held back by the 'wise women' forbidding a battle till the next new moon. But at length Caesar, who had fortified a camp on both sides of the Germans, made it impossible for them to refuse battle. After a desperate fight the Germans were defeated with immense slaughter and retreated to the Rhine or perhaps to its tributary the Ill. In the five miles that intervened they were pursued and slaughtered by Caesar's cavalry, and only a few (among whom was Ariovistus himself) succeeded in crossing the river by means of boats or by swimming. In the course of the pursuit Caesar was much relieved by being able to rescue one of the imprisoned legates—Gaius Valerius Procillus—who was being dragged along by his captors.

Results of the first campaign.

The result of the victory was to clear Gaul of the Germans and to cause the Suevi, who were gathering on the other side of the river and preparing to cross it, to retreat homewards pursued by the Ubii who inflicted great loss upon them. The first year's campaign therefore in Gaul, though it had done nothing in actually subduing the natives, made it clear that the Romans would not tolerate the interference of any external nations in the country, and paved the way to the conquests of the next six years. The victory over the Germans was the second act in the great struggle between the Roman Empire and the encroaching Teutonic tribes. The first act in the drama had been played in B.C. 102—101, when Marius destroyed the Cimbri and Teutones. But the same danger was to recur again and again at intervals for the next four hundred years and more, and to end eventually in the

subjugation of Italy and its long separation practically from the rest of the Empire.

The Gauls in the time of Caesar.

The Romans had had many contests with the Gauls who had settled south of the Alps from almost the beginning of their history and it was not until B.C. 191 that Cisalpine Gaul had become a Roman Province. Then the necessity of keeping an open road to Spain had caused them gradually to extend their power beyond the Alps and about B.C. 121 the Province before described was formed. The rest of Gaul they found inhabited by a large number of tribes, some of whom were the parent stocks from which their old opponents in Cisalpine Gaul had come. They were not properly speaking barbarous, that is they had an ancient civilisation and were acquainted with agriculture, and other arts, and had a system of government, and a religion. They were excellent fighters, and not only supplied may states with cavalry, but the more energetic of them had been successful in pushing their way into Italy and Asia and establishing great settlements there. It seems therefore at first sight hard to understand how Caesar was able to conquer so large a country, at such a distance from his base of supplies, and with comparatively so small an army. The explanation seems to lie principally in the divisions among the Gauls themselves. Each tribe was independent, and though two strong tribes—the Aedui and Sequani—exercised a sort of supremacy over the rest, this in itself split up the country into two factions hostile to each other and willing to invite foreign aid (Roman or German) in order to crush the other. This weakened the country as a whole. They were also divided in blood and general habits. The people in the South-West (Aquitania), with a strong admixture of Spanish blood, seem to have been unwarlike and to have soon ceased to support the more northern tribes. They were easily subdued. The people of Normandy and Brittany were hardier and simpler, but they were in many cases a sea-going folk busied in fishing or commerce, but not well prepared to repel attacks on land. The inhabitants of Northern Gaul and Belgium (*Belgica*), closely allied with German

tribes, were much more warlike and determined, and gave Caesar the greatest trouble of all. The tribes in Central Gaul —called in a special sense *Celts*—had all the qualities which the Romans had learnt to expect from Gauls. They were brilliant and gallant, and twice nearly defeated Caesar. But they had not much stay or solidity in them. Their dislike of admitting foreign influence also had kept them back. Though good fighters they had neither the discipline nor the military science of the Romans. Their weapons were inferior, their fortifications—though sometimes strong—were seldom capable of withstanding the engines employed by the Romans. But above all it was the want of union that caused the ruin of the country. Combinations formed from time to time by energetic chiefs dissolved at the first touch of failure : while Caesar never wavered or changed and was diverted by no difficulty and discouraged by no reverse. Generous and courteous to all who submitted, he was unpitying to those that resisted. He made it clear to all that union with Rome brought advantages, but that, whether that were so or not, resistance would be ruthlessly punished.

A Province.

We have spoken often of Caesar's province or provinces. It is necessary to understand what is meant by a Roman province. The word *provincia* (of uncertain derivation) was applied to any sphere of duty of a Roman magistrate. When the Romans began governing countries outside Italy the word was naturally applied to them as the sphere of duty of some magistrate sent out to administer them, and so gradually was used of the countries themselves as well as of the office. The governor in the two first of these provinces (Sicily and Sardinia) was one of the praetors, who after his election as praetor was assigned to it by drawing lots with the other praetors. As the number of provinces increased, as well as the legal business of the praetors in Rome, it became the custom for them to stay in Rome during their year of office and to go to a province the next year, when they were called propraetors (*pro praetore*, 'instead of a praetor'). In some provinces it was thought necessary

The propraetor or proconsul.

to have men of higher rank as governors, and so the consuls also after their year of office went to one or other of them and were called proconsuls (*pro consule*). The Senate decided each year which provinces were to have proconsuls and which propraetors, and then the praetors drew lots for the praetorian provinces and the two consuls for the consular provinces. Both classes of governors were sometimes called proconsuls, whether they had been consuls or only praetors.

Government of a Province.

The governor of the province commanded the legions stationed in it, the number of which was settled by the Senate. He had also the right of enrolling auxiliaries in the province if necessary, but by a law of Sulla's had no right to leave his province to attack an independent nation outside without an order from the Senate. No doubt in cases where dangerous barbarians were on the frontier this law was not strictly interpreted: and Caesar himself had an even greater freedom in this respect than usual; for the decree of the Senate assigning Gallia Transalpina to him had a clause (as apparently had been the case before in regard to Gaul) allowing him to do anything 'that seemed to him to be for the advantage of the republic.' This would cover both the enrolment of additional legions and the offensive operations in non-Roman Gaul. Besides his military duties in his province the proconsul or propraetor acted as judge, presiding at *conventus* or assizes. The law which he there administered differed in different provinces; for a province consisted not only of a certain district with fixed geographical limits, but of a number of states, which had generally once had constitutions and laws of their own; and as a rule, when that was the case, the Roman commissioners who settled the constitution of the province arranged that the law existing in these states should still be held good, only the governor heard appeals and retained in his own hands the decision as to sentences of death.

The quaestor.

With the proconsul there was always a quaestor who managed the finances of the province and of the army in it. Every province paid tribute to the Roman

treasury, from which the expenses of the government and military establishment would have to be deducted. But neither the kind of tribute nor the manner of collecting it was the same in all ; and in most there were certain 'free states' (*liberae civitates*) which for various reasons did not pay tribute, though they had to furnish troops when required.

The Army. The Roman army was not as yet one body, like our own, all under one Commander-in-chief or the Crown. It was in fact a number of armies, raised as required, and put under the command of the magistrate who enrolled them, and to whom they took the military oath or *sacramentum*. Thus so many legions were under the command of the governor of Spain, so many under the command of the governor of Africa, or of Gaul, and so on. Such legions could be and were at times transferred from one province to another, and the same rule as to length of service, pay, share in booty, and claim for pension or other reward at the end of their service applied to all alike. Since the time of Marius all full citizens, independent of the amount of their property, could serve in the army, but only citizens. The arms and dress of the legionary soldiers were uniform. All had the large oblong shield (*scutum*), coat of mail (*lorica*), helmet or bronze cap (*galea*), greaves (*ocreae*), a short straight sword for cut or thrust (*gladius*) and two stout javelins or *pila* to be thrown before charging. **Auxiliaries.** Auxiliaries (*auxilia*) were however raised in the provinces or contributed by allied kings or states, and sometimes these men were rewarded by the gift of citizenship. Marius had done this, and Caesar having raised and trained a body of Gauls in a legion which he called *alaudae*, gave the citizenship afterwards to the whole. These auxiliaries were not under the officers of the legion, but had *praefecti* of their own, and were often called *alarii*, whether cavalry or infantry, because they were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*). **Cavalry.** But besides these each legion had a certain number of cavalry which in Caesar's time was composed usually of Gauls or other nations. These are distinct from the *auxilia* and were attached

to their respective legions, as also were certain light-armed auxiliaries, such as *iaculatores* (javelin throwers), *funditores* (slingers), *sagittarii* (archers).

Officers of the legion.

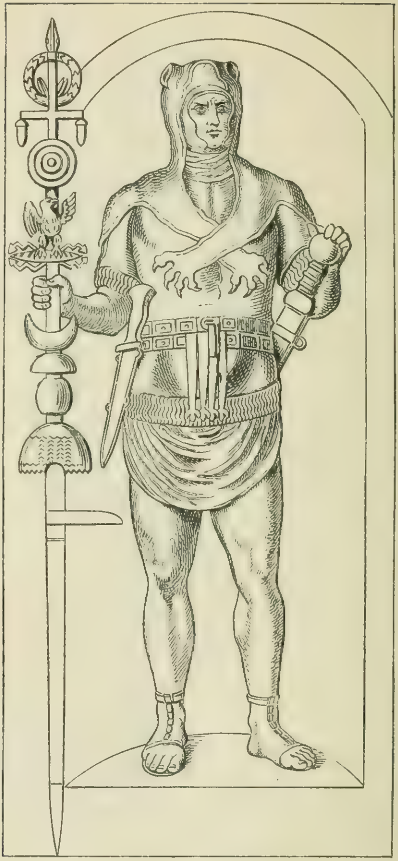
The legions, which in Caesar's time consisted of about 5,000 infantry besides the cavalry,—the number of auxiliaries serving with the legion being usually about the same,—were thus officered: Six *tribuni militum* who had the general management of the discipline of the legion. Two of them took over the work for two months in turn. They were not attached to any definite division of the legion, and in actual battle commanded whatever part of it seemed good to the commander-in-chief; and the legion being divided into ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty *centuriae*, when a cohort for any reason was stationed at a distance from the main body of the legion it was usually commanded by a *tribunus*. The other officers were 60 centurions (one for each *centuria*), and the same number of subalterns (*optiones*). The centurions were nominated by the military tribunes acting for the commander-in-chief, the *optiones* by the centurions. The ordinary army assigned to a consul or proconsul was composed of two legions, and when on service in a province or elsewhere he was generally accompanied by two *legati*. If it was a more important service involving a larger army he had more *legati*. These formed his staff and did whatever duty he asked of them. It was becoming the custom to put one at the head of each legion, and Caesar, who had ten *legati*, constantly did so. They were not however appointed as officers in the army with a view to command a legion. When they did so it was in obedience to their chief. It was not till a single Emperor was commander-in-chief of the whole army that a *legatus* was regularly put in command of each legion.

Standards.

The standard of a whole legion had the figure of an eagle at the head of the staff, a custom begun by Marius (about B.C. 104). But each cohort and each maniple had a standard (*signum* or *vexillum*) of different shape and description, which directed the movements of the men, and the loss of which was looked upon as the direst disgrace and



A Roman legionary soldier.

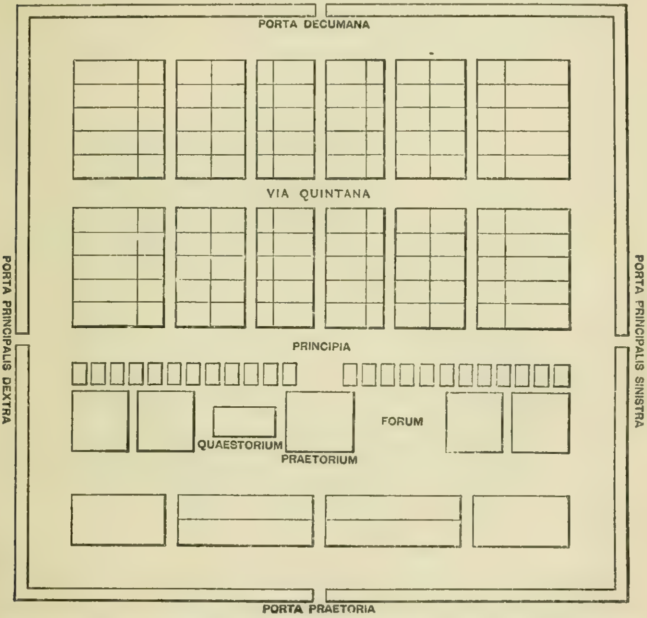


A *vexillarius* or Standard-bearer.

generally involved the severest military punishment. When the men halted these standards were stuck in the ground; when the order for advance was given the *signiferi* or *vexillarii* took them up and led the way. So we have such phrases as *signa ferre* or *inferre*, 'to advance' or 'to charge'; *signa convertere*, 'to wheel round'; *signa conferre*, 'to engage.'

The Camp.

The Roman army on a campaign or on the march invariably pitched a camp. Of course if meant for prolonged occupation its construction was more elaborate and complete; but even if it was intended only for a single night's



stay it was arranged and constructed on the same plan. Supposing it meant for two legions and auxiliaries (the normal consular army), the shape of the camp would be a square, each side

of which should be 2017 feet. This was divided into two unequal portions, at the 700th foot from the front by a space or roadway 100 feet broad called *principia*. In the smaller of these two parts were the general's quarters (*praetorium*), the quarters of the quaestor (*quaestorium*), a *forum* or market-place, and the tents of the general's staff, praetorian guard, and volunteers. In the larger space were the tents of the soldiers, arranged in groups with spaces between each group called *viae*, besides one broad *via* (50 feet) exactly bisecting them, called *via quintana*. The whole was surrounded by an *agger* or earthwork thrown up by digging a trench or *fossa*. The height of the *agger* differed according to circumstances, but was often as much as 30 feet, and on the top of it was a *vallum* made of stakes, where wood



Agger and *Vallum*.

could be got (the soldiers often carried two apiece for the purpose), with boughs on them which could be interlaced. A space 200 feet broad was kept clear between the agger and the tents. There were four gates to the camp, the *porta praetoria* on the end next the *praetorium*, the *porta decumana* in the centre of the

opposite end, and at either end of the *principia* the *porta principalis dextra* and *porta principalis sinistra*. The plan of the camps was so uniform that the soldiers knew exactly what part each had to work at and where to pitch his tent: and when they arrived at the place selected by the advance party sent in front to choose the site, they at once fell to work and in a few hours completed it sufficiently for defence.

Caesar's nine years' government in Gaul resulted in adding the whole of France and Belgium to the Empire. It has often been a subject for discussion whether he went to his province deliberately intending to do this, or whether he was really led on from one step to another till the whole work was done. Perhaps there is some truth in both statements. For some few years before his consulship there had been an uneasy feeling at Rome that mischief was brewing in Gaul; and though the Senators had thought it prudent to make terms with the German Ariovistus, who was in Gaul with a large and increasing company of his fellow countrymen, they must have regarded his presence there with alarm, and have been conscious that they had failed their allies, the Aedui, and thereby lost the hold which they once possessed in Celtic Gaul. Caesar was anxious to do a brilliant service to the Empire, which should place him in an equal position to that of Pompey, or even in a higher one; and Gaul may have seemed to him to offer him the best chance of doing so. Still it does not appear that at first he understood that Transalpine Gaul was to be the chief scene of his activity, or he would not have placed his three legions in Aquileia, so far removed from the Transalpine Province. But however that may be, from the time of the Helvetian war his mind seems to have been made up. Roman supremacy was to be secured throughout Gaul at all hazards. The Germans were to be driven across the Rhine, and even the Britanni, who traded with the Western Gauls and aided them in various ways, must submit to the overlordship. His enemies at Rome accused him of deliberately seeking excuses for his expeditions, and wanted to recall him, or even hand him over to some of the

Caesar's achievements in Gaul.

injured tribes. But his success was too complete and his party at Rome too strong to allow of that being done ; and he carried out what, if he had not intended at first, he had soon resolved upon,—the reduction of this new and splendid territory to complete acquiescence in Roman supremacy, so as to form a barrier against the vigorous and restless northern tribes from beyond the Rhine, who were always seeking the pleasanter lands of France, and might soon be a danger to Italy itself.

C. IULI CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER PRIMUS.

Threefold division of Gaul between the Belgae, Aquitani and Celtae. The most warlike are those who border on the Germani and are farthest from 'the Province.'

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important, proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt,

quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

Orgetorix, a chief of the Helvetii, persuades them to seek a better and larger territory B.C. 61.

2. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messala et M. Pupio Pisone consulibus regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Iura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex

parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se finis habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

Preparations for the migration are made during two years. Orgetorix secures the support of Casticus, son of the chief of the Sequăni, and Dumnorix of the Aedui, and aims at acquiring supreme rule over the Helvetii.

3. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt: in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae

plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant, et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

Suspected of aiming at kingly power Orgetorix is brought to trial. He is rescued by a popular gathering, but soon afterwards dies.

4. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coëgerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coëgit et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest supicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

The migration of the Helvetii however is to be carried out, along with some neighbouring tribes.

5. Post eius mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim,

vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent, trium mensum molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre iubent. Persuadent Rauricis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis, uti eodem usi consilio oppidis suis vicisque exustis una cum eis proficiscantur, Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

The two possible routes for the Helvetii, (1) *between the Jura and the Rhone,* (2) *to cross the Rhone at Geneva and march through the Roman province* (*Provence*).

6. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur.

The day fixed is 28 *March*, B.C. 58.

Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. V Kal. Apr. L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus.

On hearing this Caesar (who, though appointed proconsul of Gaul and Illyricum, was still at Rome) hurries to Gaul. The Helvetii send ambassadors to ask leave to march through the Province. Caesar promises to answer on the 13 *April.*

7. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una), pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindi. Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat, L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines inimico animo data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi temperaturos ab iniuria et maleficio existi-

mabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum: si quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.

Meanwhile he protects the line of the river between the lake and the Jura (19 *miles*) *by building an earthwork or wall, and puts garrisons in forts all along it.*

8. Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere posset.

On the 13 *of April the Helvetian legates return and their request is refused. They attempt to cross the Rhone.*

Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii ea spe deiecti navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conati operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conatu destiterunt.

By the intervention of the Aeduan Dumnorix they obtain leave to go through the territory of the Sequăni.

9. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat et quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et iniuria transeant.

Caesar learns that they mean to cross the Jura into the territory of the Sequăni and Aedui, and turning South and passing by Toulouse, to make for the Santones on the West Coast. He determines to prevent them.

10. Caesari renuntiatur, Helvetiis esse in animo, per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intellegebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum. ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet.

He brings the legions from Italy. They have to fight as they cross the Alps.

Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, T. Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrones et Graioceli et Caturiges locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

The Helvetii meanwhile had made their way into the territory of the Aedui, who send to ask Caesar's help against their raids.

11. Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque ab eis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium:

Speech of the Aeduan envoys.

Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint.

Envoys of other tribes back up the request. Caesar determines to move.

Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt et demonstrant sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

The Helvetii are crossing the Arar (Saône). Caesar comes up with them when one-fourth (the people of the pagus Tigurinus) were still on the left bank of the river.

12. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iudicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus iunctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus: nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est.

The previous offences of the Tigurini against Rome.

Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive casu sive consilio deorum inmortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatas iniurias ultus est, quod eius soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

The Tigurini having been destroyed, Caesar crosses the Arar in pursuit of the rest.

13. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii repentino eius adventu commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cuius legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat.

Speech of the Helvetian legate: he promises that they will settle wherever Caesar orders, but will fight if he attacks them.

Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi

populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ei, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magno opere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret. Se ita a patribus maioribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

Caesar's reply: The Helvetii must give hostages, and indemnify the Aedui and Allobroges.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent: qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegeret, quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune iniurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores

interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intellegat, et si Aeduis de iniuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum eis pacem esse facturum.

They haughtily refuse.

Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a maioribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuerint: eius rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato discessit.

Roman cavalry skirmish with the enemy and lose some men.

15. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt.

The Helvetii are encouraged and their rear guard several times engage the Roman troops which are following them during about fifteen days.

Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnunquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus populationibusque pro-

hibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

Caesar's supplies run short, and the Aedui put off the promised convoys of corn.

16. Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui: conferri, comportari, adesse dicere.

Caesar summons the chiefs of the Aedui and remonstrates with them on their dilatory behaviour.

Ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus ab eis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit; multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

Speech of Liscus, chief of the Aedui. There is a strong party among the Aedui who do not wish to assist the Romans, for fear of becoming their subjects.

17. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod debeant: praestare si iam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre, neque dubitare, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intellegere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

On enquiry Caesar finds that the chief instigator of this treacherous policy is Dumnorix, brother of Divitiacus. He had bought the contracts for collecting taxes, secured great wealth and influence, and hated Caesar and Rome.

18. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat, sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit

esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. Complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse: magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia eius deminuta, et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare.

Caesar gets other evidence of the treachery of Dumnorix.

Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum a Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitatui, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum. **19**. Quibus

rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo iniussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere iuberet.

Caesar is unwilling to take extreme measures against Dumnorix for the sake of his brother Divitiacus, who had been loyal.

His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, iustitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne eius supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur.

He summons Divitiacus to his presence.

Itaque prius, quam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari iubet et cotidianis interpretibus remotis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine eius offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuat, vel civitatem statuere iubeat.

Divitiacus admits his brother's treason, but entreats Caesar to pardon him.

20. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione volgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.

Caesar consents; but warns Dumnorix and places him under surveillance.

Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prendit; consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti eius apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et rei publicae iniuriam et suum dolorem eius voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

Caesar sends Labienus to occupy a hill so as to intercept the march of the Helvetii.

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et eis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

A false alarm. Considius announces that the hill is already occupied by the enemy. Caesar however follows the enemy as usual.

22. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri: id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae

essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiavisse. Eo die quo consuerat intervallo hostes sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

Caesar, leaving the enemy's rear, marches towards Bibracte (Autun) to get provisions. The Helvetii thinking that he is retreating harass his rear.

23. Postridie eius diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis, quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commisissent, sive eo, quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

Caesar withdraws to higher ground and fortifies a camp. The Helvetii follow and make a laager with their wagons.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitatumque,

qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranorum; sed in summo iugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocari ac totum montem hominibus compleri et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri iussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissima acie reiecto nostro equitatu phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

The battle. The Helvetii are repulsed and retire to a hill. The Romans follow and are almost outflanked by the Boii and Tulingi.

25. Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites in loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disiecta gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant, multi ut diu iactato brachio praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris Boii et Tulingi, qui

hominum milibus circiter XV agmen hostium claudebant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto aggressi circumvenire, et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima et secunda acies, ut victis ac submotis resisteret, tertia, ut venientes sustineret.

The Helvetii however are at length driven to take refuge in their laager of wagons, which the Romans take after some hard fighting. About 130,000 *of the Helvetii escape into the territory of the Lingones, to whom Caesar sends orders not to help them.*

26. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros obiecerant et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela coniciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subiciebant nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia CXXX superfuerunt eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et

propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re iuvarent: qui si iuvissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

The Helvetii surrender. But six thousand secretly leave the camp and make for the Rhine.

27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes proiecissent suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare iussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa circiter hominum milia VI eius pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis traditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

Caesar sends in pursuit of the six thousand, who are brought back and treated as enemies, i.e. slaughtered. The rest are spared but forced to go back to the homes they had left.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis,

perfugis traditis in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit et, quod omnibus frugibus amissis domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut eis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere iussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt quosque postea in parem iuris libertatisque condicionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

Out of 368,000 *Helvetii and neighbouring tribes who had started on the expedition*, 110,000 *returned home.*

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia CCLXIII, Tulingorum milia XXXVI, Latobrigorum XIIII, Rauricorum XXIII, Boiorum XXXII; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia XCII. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium C et X.

Caesar receives the congratulations of the Gallic tribes on his victory over the Helvetii. They ask him to sanction the summoning of a council of all Gaul.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: Intellegere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod eo consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iudicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias haberent. Petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt et iureiurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

The chiefs lay before Caesar their grievance as to the presence of the German Ariovistus in Gaul, invited by the Arverni and Sequani to assist them against the Aedui.

31. Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt petieruntque, uti sibi secreto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata sese omnes

flentes Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent.

Speech of Divitiacus.

Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tanto opere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse, uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum primo circiter milia XV Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos plures: nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et XX milium numerum. Cum his Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis et iureiurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros neque auxilium a populo Romano imploraturos neque recusaturos, quo minus perpetuo sub illorum dicione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit ut iuraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et

Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque iureiurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed peius victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere iuberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum milia hominum XXIIII ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse eius imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi si quid in Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus vel recenti victoria vel nomine populi Romani deterrere posse, ne maior

multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniuria posse defendere.

The Sequani not joining the others in making the appeal, Divitiacus explains that they do not venture to do so because Ariovistus is in occupation of part of their territory.

32. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes capite demisso terram intueri. Eius rei quae causa esset, miratus ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

The encroaching policy of the Germans, and the duty of Rome to frustrate it.

33. His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: magnam se habere spem et beneficio

suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret, imprimis quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in dicione videbat Germanorum teneri eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano periculosum videbat, neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret; quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

Caesar resolves to propose an interview with Ariovistus, who answers haughtily.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio deligeret: velle sese de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum

fuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

A second embassy to Ariovistus demanding that he should bring no more Germans across the Rhine and should refrain from oppressing the Aedui and Sequani.

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam tanto suo populique Romani beneficio affectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse, quae ob eo postularet: primum, ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret; deinde obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet Sequanisque permitteret, ut, quos illi haberent, voluntate eius reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos iniuria lacesseret, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret. Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese, quoniam M. Messala, M. Pisone consulibus senatus censuisset, uti, quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo reipublicae facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos

populi Romani defenderet, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum.

The obstinate reply of Ariovistus, 'Caesar is the aggressor, and he is ready to fight him.'

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Ius esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, eis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent: (item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse.) Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo iure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo iure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque eis neque eorum sociis iniuria bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id non fecissent, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani afuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederetur: intellecturum, quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos XIIII tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

Caesar hears of fresh migrations of Germans across the Rhine.

37. Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur, et legati ab Aeduis et a Treveris veniebant:

Aedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Treveri autem, pagos centum Sueborum ad ripas Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Sueborum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese coniunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit comparata magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Ariovistus is about to occupy Vesontio (Besançon). Caesar gets there first, and puts a garrison into the town.

38. Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id ne accideret, magno opere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas, idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis ut circino circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum mille sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita, ut radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et

cum oppido coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.

A panic in the Roman camp, owing to the reports of the formidable character of the Germans. Caesar is warned that the soldiers will refuse to march.

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum, et mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant (saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant ferre potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat, ut eius voluntate discedere liceret: nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Volgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ei, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque quique equitatui praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus

timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesari nuntiarant, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri iussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

Caesar refutes the presumption of the officers and men and declares that he will start next morning with the 10th legion.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato concilio omniumque ordinum ad id concilium adhibitis centurionibus vehementer eos incusavit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse; cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaio Mario pulsis non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quae a nobis accepissent, sublevarent. Ex

quo iudicari posse, quantum haberet in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint. Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaererent, reperire posse diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multos menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes iam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae: frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare, iamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore iudicaturos. Quod non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset, repraesentaturum et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum

intellegere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

Caesar's speech has the desired effect, and the start is made at the time fixed.

41. Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent: se nec umquam dubitasse neque timuisse neque de summa belli suum iudicium sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione accepta et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

Ariovistus consents to an interview, but demands that Caesar should come to it with only an escort of cavalry, without any foot soldiers. Caesar consents, but mounts the men of the 10th legion as his guard.

42. Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur, magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis cognitis suis postulatis fore, uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe (ultro citroque) cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu veniret: alia ratione sese non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volebat neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatui committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod cum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit: plus, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem ei facere: pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, ad equum rescribere.

The place of interview.

43. Planities erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis vexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit.

Caesar's speech.

Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iustam haberet beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque iustae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent, quae senatusconsulta quotiens quamque honorifica in eos facta essent, ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse: quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id eis eripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis

dederat, ne aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

The reply of Ariovistus, 'Unless Caesar withdraws his army he will fight him, and he knows that if he kills him he will please a powerful party at Rome.'

44. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse: sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse: omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere: eius rei

testimonium esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae finibus egressum. (Quid sibi vellet, cur in suas possessiones veniret?) Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, (qui in suo iure se interpellaremus.) Quod fratres Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio populi Romani usos esse. Debere se suspicari simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed hoste habiturum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum et quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo eius labore et periculo confecturum.

Caesar's reply. Reasons why he cannot comply with the demand of Ariovistus.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset; neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime merentes socios desereret, neque se iudicare, Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset neque in provinciam redegisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani iustissimum esse in Gallia imperium; si iudicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

Treachery on the part of the cavalry of Ariovistus.

46. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit seque ad suos recepit suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in volgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros

eius equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius exercitui iniectum est.

Ariovistus proposes another interview. Caesar refuses, but sends envoys.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie eius diei Germani retineri non poterant, quin in nostros tela conicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adulescentem, cuius pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, qua multa iam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere et Marcum Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa? Conantis dicere prohibuit et in catenas coniecit.

Ariovistus advances to within six miles of Caesar's camp.

48. Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie eius diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant: cum his in proeliis versabantur. Ad eos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant, si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumsistebant; si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut iubis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

Counter movement by Caesar. He tries in vain to induce Ariovistus to give him battle. He fortifies a second camp.

49. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab eis, castris idoneum locum delegit acieque

triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit.

An indecisive engagement with part of the forces of Ariovistus. The 'wise women' forbid Ariovistus to fight a general engagement till the New Moon.

50. Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit paulumque a maioribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset, necne; eas

ita dicere: non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

Ariovistus forced to give battle.

51. Postridie eius diei Caesar praesidium utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit, omnis alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harudes, Marcomanos, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suebos, omnemque aciem suam redis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

A desperate fight.

52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, ut eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur. Reiectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta impetus gladiorum

exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. Id cum animadvertisset Publius Crassus adulescens, qui equitatui praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam ei, qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

Utter defeat of the Germans, and their flight to the Rhine.

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem repererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit: reliquos omnes equitatu consecuti nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre missam: utraeque in ea fuga perierunt. Duae filiae harum, altera occisa, altera capta est. Gaius Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitatu persequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium

sibi restitutum videbat, neque eius calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item Marcus Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The result of the battle deters the Suebi from crossing the Rhine, and the campaign is closed early.

54. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. Caesar una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

NOTES.

[P. § *refers to sections in the Revised Latin Primer.*]

Page 1.

1. **Gallia.** By Gaul Caesar means all France and Belgium up to the Rhine, with the parts of Germany and Switzerland which are on the left bank of the same river up to about the lake of Constance ; but from this is to be deducted the Roman 'Province,' that is, South-eastern France, bounded on the West by the Garonne, on the East by the river Var, separating it from Italy, on the North by the river Rhone, as it flows westward from the lake of Geneva, on the West by the Cevennes and the river Tarn flowing into the Garonne, and on the South by the Pyrenees and the Gulf of Lyons.

omnis, 'taken as a whole.'

2, 3. **Belgae...Aquitani...Celtae.** The Belgae, from whom the modern name 'Belgium' has been derived, were partly German, and occupied the part of France north of the Seine and Marne, and that part of the Netherlands that is south of the Rhine ; the Aquitani, who have left their name in 'Aquitaine,' were connected with ancient Spanish or Iberian peoples, as was natural from the easy passage of the Pyrenees in the western corner ; the Celtae, Galatae, or Galli are the inhabitants of Central France. All three were divided into numerous tribes with different names.

4. **institutis**, 'established customs,' as opposed to *leges*, rules laid down by a government, whether in writing or not.

6. **fortissimi**, 'most warlike.'

7. **propterea quod**, 'for this reason that,' 'because.' P. § 425 *n*.

humanitate, 'civilisation.' *humanitas* means something more than 'humanity,' it includes everything that tended to make men act as reasonable and enlightened men.

8. **provinciae.** Originally the word *provincia* meant any sphere of duty of a Roman magistrate. When the Romans began conquering other nations it was applied in a special sense to any country or countries which were under the rule of a single proconsul or propraetor,

and were subject to certain conditions imposed by the Romans when they took possession. In speaking of Gallic affairs 'the Province' means the part of South-eastern France (described in the note on l. 1) which had been gradually conquered and then organised as a single province in B.C. 118. When Caesar came there as proconsul [B.C. 58] the rest of Gaul was still independent, though some of the tribes had made treaties of friendship with Rome, and when that was the case the Romans always claimed a certain right of interference. The chief towns of 'the Province' were Narbo (Narbonne), whence it is sometimes called Gallia Narbonensis, and Tolosa (Toulouse). Massilia (Marseilles) with its immediate territory was nominally free and independent.

8. **minime...important**, 'and it is least frequently to them than to any that merchants come bringing what tends to enervate men's spirits.' In this clause note first the emphatic position of *minime*, which does not merely qualify *saepe*, but influences the whole clause; and secondly the use of *atque* instead of *et* or *que* when the second clause is really part of the first. The coming of the merchants and the bringing of the wares are all part of the same idea.

9. **commeant**, 'go backwards and forwards.' The Belgae lived so far North that the pedlars who bought goods at Marseilles or Narbonne, where merchandise from the South and East was landed, did not often reach them: and as yet there was little commerce outside the Mediterranean in the North Sea, except perhaps for tin, hides, and such like, with Britain.

12. **qua de causa**, 'for which reason,' lit. '*from* which cause.'

13. **virtute**, abl. of respect, P. § 235.

Page 2.

2. **cum**, temporal 'on occasions when.' It therefore takes the indicative.

3. **eorum una pars**, 'one part of their country,' lit. 'one part of them.' The people are put for the country in which they live.

4. **Gallos obtinere**, 'that the Gauls hold': do not translate *obtinere* 'obtain.' **dictum est**, 'it has been said by me,' see p. 1, l. 5.

5. **continetur**, 'it is bounded.'

6. **ab Sequanis et Helvetiis**, 'on the side of the Sequăni and Helvetii,' like *a tergo*, 'on the rear.' P. § 286.

7. **vergit ad septentriones**, 'it extends towards the North.' Every country in a sense extends towards the North; but Caesar means that

in comparison with other parts of Gaul, e.g. the Province, this Celtic Gaul is more northern.

9, 12. **spectant**, 'face.' Aquitania may perhaps be said to face North-west as compared with Provence if we regard its coast as it faces the sea, but it does not add much to any clearness of geographical idea to speak of Belgium as 'facing North-east.'

11. **eam partem Oceani**, i.e. the Bay of Biscay.

12. **pertinet...ad**, 'extends to.'

15. **M. Messala...consulibus**, 'in the consulship of M. Messala and M. Pupius Piso' i.e. B.C. 61. The Romans dated all events by naming the two chief magistrates or consuls of the year, and sometimes by naming the year since the foundation of the city, which answers to B.C. 753. They did not begin the latter system however till just about this time or soon afterwards.

18. **perfacile esse**, '(he argued) that it was very easy.' It is *oratio obliqua* depending on some word of saying implied in *persuasit.*

19. **cum...praestarent**, 'since they excelled.' P. § 426.

20. **hoc...quod**, 'because,' 'for the reason that.'

21. **loci natura...continentur**, 'are shut in by natural boundaries.'

22. **Rheno.** The description is not very definite; but the country of the Helvetii which Caesar here indicates may be taken to be from Basle to Geneva, including Vaud, Neuchatel, and part of Berne. Its eastern extent is indefinite, perhaps the river Aar might be taken roughly to mark it.

26. **provinciam nostram**, see p. 1, l. 8.

27. **his rebus fiebat, ut...vagarentur**, 'the result of these circumstances was that they did not wander so widely as they would have done.'

28. **qua ex parte**, 'in which respect,' 'a circumstance from which.'

Page 3.

4, 5. **in longitudinem...in latitudinem**, adverbial, 'lengthwise... in breadth,' i.e. 'from North to South...from East to West.'

5. **patebant**, indicative because it is Caesar's statement, not part of the thought of the Helvetii.

7. **quae...pertinerent**, subj. in virtual oblique clause; it represents the thought of the Helvetii, 'what was (as they thought) proper to their start.' P. § 469.

8. **carrorum**, 'wagons,' cp. Engl. 'car,' 'cart.'

9. **quam maximum**, 'as great as possible.'

12. **ad eas res conficiendas**, the gerundive of purpose. P. § 379.

17. **obtinuerat**, 'had held,' see p. 2, l. 4.

18. **amicus appellatus**, 'had been called *friend* of the Roman people.' When a foreign prince was called 'a friend of the Romans' by the Senate, though there was no formal alliance, yet the Romans considered themselves bound to defend him against the attacks of others, and in return expected him to maintain their interests.

19. **ut regnum...occuparet**, 'that he should seize upon royal power,' dependent on the historic present *persuadet*. The Gallic tribes seem to have elected their chiefs or kings, and the son of the last king had no hereditary right.

21. **principatum...obtinebat**, 'was holding the chief place.' He was recognised as 'chief,' but had not the title of king.

22. **acceptus**, 'acceptable to,' 'popular with.' The passive past participle has an adjectival sense, like *invictus*, 'invincible.'

23. **in matrimonium dat**, 'gives her as his wife,' lit. 'into' or 'for matrimony,' p. 8, l. 8.

24. **perfacile factu**, 'very easy of accomplishment.' P. § 388.

conata, 'attempts,' 'things attempted.' The deponent verb *conor* has a passive past participle, as have many deponents. P. § 126.

25. **propterea quod...obtenturus esset**, 'seeing that he was about to hold.' Oblique subjunctive because the argument of Orgetorix, not the writer's, is being expressed.

propterea quod, P. § 425, *note*.

26. **non esse dubium, quin**, 'that there was no doubt that,' 'that it was certain that.' **quin** (*qui ne*) follows words of doubt with negative. P. § 422.

Page 4.

1. **plurimum...possent**, 'were the most powerful.'

suis...suo, instrumental abl., 'by means of his own forces and his own army.'

2. **illis**, dat. of advantage, 'for them,' he declares that he 'will secure them royal power.'

3. **inter se**, 'to each other,' 'mutually.' Latin has no pronoun to express mutual relation like ἀλλήλους in Greek, and this combination of preposition and reflective pronoun has to serve instead. P. § 285.

4. **per**, 'by means of.'

5. **Galliae...potiri**, 'to get possession of all Gaul.' Though other writers use *potior* with genitive, Caesar elsewhere uses the ablative. P. § 253.

7. **ex vinculis**, 'in bonds,' cp. *ex equis pugnare*, 'to fight on

horseback' ('from horses'). P. § 286. **causam dicere,** 'to stand his trial,' lit. 'to speak' or 'plead his cause.'

8. **oportebat ut...cremaretur,** 'the regular penalty if he were condemned was to be burnt in the fire.' The *ut* clause is in apposition to the subject (*poenam*) of the infinitive. P. § 415.

9. **causae dictionis,** 'for the trial,' cp. *causam dicere.*

10. **familiam,** 'clan.' *Familia* is properly a group of *famuli*, 'servants'; but it came to be used like our 'family' for all those connected by domestic ties of any sort. Here it seems like the Scotch 'clan,' to apply to all who are descended or claim to be descended however remotely from a common ancestor.

ad...milia decem, 'to the number of 10,000 persons.'

11. **hominum** would include women and children.

12. **clientes,** in Roman language clients meant originally those persons living at Rome without full rights who depended on the protection of members of the *gentes*, the Patricians. Then it came to mean almost any person dependent on another in any way. We are told very early about the Gauls that their great men prided themselves on the number of such dependents or clients, but we do not know exactly what the nature of the connexion was. The word is derived from *κλύειν*, 'to listen.'

13. **per eos...eripuit,** 'he escaped from the necessity of standing his trial by their means.' The number of his followers overawed the judges and he went away without having to defend himself.

14. **civitas,** 'the whole tribe,' i.e. the Helvetii as a nation.

17. **neque abest...quin...consciverit,** 'nor is there wholly wanting a suspicion of his having committed suicide.' P. § 419.

18. **consciverit** (*conscisco*), 'resolve upon,' 'decree,' 'adjudge,' is used with reflexive pronoun almost exclusively in this phrase, *consciscere sibi mortem*, 'to resolve on death for oneself,' 'to commit suicide.'

20. **ut...exeant,** 'namely, to quit their own territory.' The *ut* clause here stands in apposition to *facere*, and is explanatory of the whole preceding sentence.

22. **oppida...vicos,** 'towns' (more or less fortified) and 'open villages.'

Page 5.

3. **domum,** the locative dependent on the verbal sense of *reditionis*, 'a going back.'

5. **mensum.** The genitive plural of *mensis* is either *mensium* or *mensum*. The latter is the form generally in Caesar and earlier Latin.

trium mensum, gen. of measure, of number or time, 'enough for three months.' P. § 256.

molita cibaria, 'ground bread-stuff.' **cibaria** is **n. pl.** adj. used as substantive.

7. **uti** or **utei** is an old form of *ut*. Later writers seem to have used either form according as the rhythm of the sentence pleased their ear.

9. **incoluerant**, 'had settled.'

10. **Noricum...Noreiam**. A district and town in Germany, modern *Carinthia* and *Neumarkt* (part of N.E. Bavaria). The Boii seem to have been a restless tribe,—one portion of them was settled in Northern Italy (*Gallia Cisalpina*), and this division of them had been in Central Gaul on the Upper Loire, and thence it seems had migrated into Germany.

11. **receptos...adsciscunt**, 'receive them into their territory and adopt them as allies.' **ad se**, 'to their country,' 'into their homes.'

12. **itinera duo**, 'only two routes,' i.e. if they wished (as they did) to go South, for there were other ways out.

13. **angustum et difficile**, 'over a narrow pass and difficult ground.' The road meant is that leading through the *pas de l'Écluse*, where the Jura (Mt Creda now tunnelled) comes down to the right bank of the Rhone. The easier road may be taken by crossing to the left bank by the bridge at Geneva or by some ford between Fort de l'Écluse and Geneva. But that would bring them into the Roman province, which Caesar was resolved to prevent. Below l'Écluse the Rhone was nowhere fordable, and therefore Caesar did not require to take his wall any farther.

16. **ut**, 'so that.' The demonstrative word for *so* is sometimes omitted. P. § 421 note.

18. **propterea quod**. See p. 3, l. 25.

19. **qui nuper pacati erant**, 'who had recently been reduced to submission.' They had rebelled in B.C. 61 and had been conquered by Gnaeus Pontinus at Salonium [perhaps *Sallonay*, in the department of Ain].

20. **vado**, 'by means of a ford,' instrumental abl.

21. **extremum oppidum**, 'the last town,' i.e. the farthest north.

22. **pons**, about where one of the modern bridges is, i.e. just where the Rhone issues from the lake.

24. **quod...viderentur**, 'because they seemed (as they argued) to be not yet well disposed towards the Roman people.' Subj. because

the thought of the Allobroges is indicated, not that of the writer. But it is a condensed expression for *quod non essent* (*ut videbatur*) because the Allobroges were not, they thought, yet reconciled to the Romans.

bono animo, 'well affected,' abl. of quality with epithet. P. § 234.

26. **ut...paterentur**, 'to allow them (the Helvetii) to go through their (the Allobroges') territory.' **suos** refers to the subject of the nearest verb *paterentur*, but not to that of the main verb *existimabant*; **eos** takes the place of the reflexive to the main verb, which is a construction often employed by Caesar to avoid ambiguity when two reflexive pronouns are required.

Page 6.

1. **diem dicunt**, 'fix a day.' It is a regular phrase, though mostly used in regard to law-suits, when the prosecutor names a day for the defendant to appear.

3. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**, *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*, 'on the fifth day before the 1st of April,' i.e. '28th of March.' In this phrase *ante* governs *Kalendas*, *diem quintum* is attracted from the abl. to acc. by its position. P. app. II. p. 217 *note*.

L. Pisone...consulibus, B.C. 58, see on p. 2, l. 15.

5. **Caesari.** Caesar had been consul the year before (B.C. 59); at the end of his consulship, his '*imperium*,' as it was called, was extended in order that he might govern a province with the authority of consul, he was *pro consule* 'in place of a consul.' But a man did not go to his province at once, there was a great deal to do in levying troops and getting his outfit, and as a rule he did not set out till about May. Caesar had by a special law been appointed proconsul of Cisalpine Gaul, the province in Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum for five years, instead of the usual one year.

[It will be as well here to remind the young reader of what Caesar was supposed to be going to govern. Italy at that time was bounded on the North by a line extending from the Rubicon, flowing into the Adriatic, to the Macra flowing into the Tuscan Sea on the West. South of that line there could be no 'province' or 'proconsul.' The country north of it to the Alps was still a province and still governed by a proconsul, but it was much more like a part of Italy than an ordinary province. As far north as the Po the inhabitants of the chief towns had the full Roman citizenship, and those to the north of the Po had an imperfect citizenship, called Latinitas. Accordingly the proconsul in Gallia Cisalpina or Togata (as it was sometimes called) though he

commanded the troops there did not have the same kind of duties to perform as in other provinces. It was not unnatural therefore to join to it Transalpine Gaul, i.e. the province occupying a large part of the south of France (as has been already described, see pp. 25, 26). In the rest of Gaul the proconsul of this province had no official position. But as his first duty was to protect his 'province' he would be sure to have dealings, friendly or hostile, with the tribes of Celtic Gaul, either bordering on the province or trading with it. This duty of protecting his province gave him an excuse for interfering in Celtic Gaul. And Caesar had been specially authorised to do whatever seemed to him in the interests of the republic in foreign Gaul. Besides, some of the tribes appealed for his help against the Germans, and he soon assumed and exercised a kind of protectorate over the whole, which was presently turned almost spontaneously into complete control. This was generally the way in which Roman dominion was established. A provincial governor was left to do what he thought necessary in the way of extending his province and then he came to the Senate to confirm his 'acts'; which it nearly always did. But besides this the Senate joined to these two provinces of Caesar's (which were not expected to be very troublesome), that of Illyricum, i.e. all the territory on the east coast of the Adriatic, which had long been nominally governed by Rome, but had been much neglected, and where some of the neighbouring warlike tribes were always giving trouble. As it turned out however, Caesar was very little in Illyricum and only sometimes during the winter in Cisalpine Gaul. His wars in Celtic Gaul took up almost all his time and care.]

6. **ab urbe.** Caesar was not *in* Rome, for a proconsul with Imperium might not enter the city, he starts from the outskirts of the city.

7. **quam maximis potest itineribus**, 'travelling with the utmost possible speed.' *iter* is the day's 'journey.' So *magnum iter* in military language is a 'great' or 'forced' march. Caesar travelled as far as possible each day. The construction is elliptical—*contendit itineribus tam maximis quam potest contendere*, 'as much the longest as he is able to travel.' But the construction, which when filled out is awkward, sounded right to the ear because of the common use of *quam* with superlatives, p. 3, l. 9.

8. **ulteriorem**, i.e. Transalpine Gaul.

10. **imperat**, 'imposes upon,' 'orders it to furnish.'

11. **legio una.** This was the 10th legion.

[A Roman *legio* at this time was a body of men answering somewhat to our 'brigade,' numbering from 3,000 to 5,000 men, all armed and dressed alike, and divided into ten companies or cohorts. Each cohort was divided into three *manipuli*, each *manipulus* into two *centuriae*.

To each legion there was a standard surmounted by the figure of an eagle (*aquila*): and each cohort and maniple had a separate standard (*signum*, *vexillum*) of its own. The men were all Roman citizens of free birth, though recruited from all parts of Italy or the provinces.

The cavalry (the nominal number to each legion being 300) were generally not Romans, but either Gauls or Spaniards or Numidians.

Attached to the legion (though not forming part of it) were *auxilia*, auxiliary troops enrolled from non-citizens in the provinces, such as javelin-throwers (*jaculatores*), slingers (*funditores*), bowmen (*sagittarii*).

The whole body was under the command of the proconsul or propraetor, or some one deputed by him (*legatus*). The auxiliaries had separate officers of their own; but the officers of the legion were (1) six *tribuni*, (2) sixty *centuriones*—two to each maniple, or one to each *centuria*, (3) 60 *optiones*, 'subalterns,' one named by each centurion.

The arms of all the soldiers of the legion were alike. Each man wore a helmet (*galea*), an oblong shield (*scutum*), coats of mail or breastplates (*loricae* or *pectoralia*), greaves (*ocreae*). For weapons of offence they had only the short straight sword (*gladius*), and two stout javelins of a peculiar make (*pila*), which they threw before charging the enemy.

The commander-in-chief, whether proconsul or propraetor, was assisted by a certain number of *legati* (Caesar had 12) who carried out his orders on whatever service they were required. There was also the *quaestor*, who managed all the business of pay, furnishing supplies, and the like. The *legati*, *quaestor* and *tribuni* formed the general's 'council,' to which also at times the chief centurions were summoned.]

15. **principem locum obtinebant**, 'held the chief rank,' 'were leaders.'

qui dicerent, 'to say'; for *qui* with subjunct. expressing purpose see P. § 423, note 3; § 453. Notice that the *imperfect* is used though the clause depends on the present *mittunt*, because *mittunt* is an historical present. P. § 411, note.

17. **propterea quod...haberent nullum**, 'because (as they said) they had no other route.' A subordinate clause in oratio obliqua. P. § 467.

18. **eius voluntate**, 'with his consent.'

19. **L. Cassium...occisum.** This occurred in B.C. 107, when the Cimbri and Teutones were in Gaul on their way to Italy. The Helvetii had joined these barbarians, and one of their chief tribes, the Tigurini, had defeated L. Cassius Longinus, one of the consuls for B.C. 107, somewhere in the territory of the Allobroges.

20. **sub iugum missum**, 'forced to march under the yoke.' This was symbolical of submission and always looked upon as the extreme

disgrace that could be inflicted on an army. Two spears were fixed up in the ground, a third was laid on these, and the beaten army had to file underneath without arms or military accoutrements.

22. **inimico animo**, 'of a hostile spirit,' abl. of quality with epithet, see p. 5, l. 24. **data facultate**, 'if they were allowed,' lit. 'leave having been given.'

23. **faciundi**, another form of the gerund *faciendi*; cp. *oriundi*, *eundi*, *secundi*.

temperaturos ab, 'would abstain from'; *temperare* governs acc. or dat. in active sense, P. § 217; but it is also, as here, used as a middle verb 'to refrain oneself.'

Page 7.

1. **spatium**, of time, 'an interval.'

dum...convenirent, 'till they met,' 'during the time that it took them to meet,' 'in the interval of their meeting.'

2. **imperaverat**, see p. 6, l. 10.

4. **ad Id. April.**, i.e. *ad Idus Apriles*, 'on (or by) the Ides of April,' the 13th. P. Append. II. pp. 215—16. For *ad* with acc. of time cp. *ad primam lucem*, 'at daybreak.'

6—10. **a lacu...perducit**, 'from the Leman lake (which flows into the Rhone) to Mt Jura, which separates the territory of the Sequani from the Helvetii, he carries a sixteen feet wall and a ditch for 19 miles.' The wall and ditch were on the left bank of the Rhone, but were not continuous, for the mountains on the left bank (the Mt aux Vaches) make the side of the river so precipitous that it is only at certain points where it is necessary (amounting in all to between 3 and 4 miles). The line of wall, ditch and towers ended at a point opposite which the French fortress guarding the *pas de l'Écluse* now stands. See p. 5, l. 13.

10. **perducit**, 'he carries the whole way,' i.e. wherever it was necessary. The phrase for building a line of wall or forts is *ducere murum*, the *per-* indicates the completion of the whole distance.

11. **disponit**, 'he stations at different points.'

quo...posset, 'to enable him.' For *quo* with comparative in final clause, see P. § 453.

15. **more et exemplo**, 'in accordance with the custom and precedent.'

17. **vim facere**, 'to offer violence,' 'to force their way.'

18. **ea spe deiecti**, 'foiled in that hope,' lit. 'displaced from that hope.'

19. **alii vadis Rhodani**, 'and some of them by fords of the Rhone.' Caesar does not say at what point in the river this is, and now-a-days the Rhone is not fordable anywhere below the junction with the Arvre, (close to the Lake), but in those times it may have been so.

21. **si perrumpere possent, conati**, 'having tried if they could force their way over.' It is shortened for *conati perrumpere, si perrumpere possent.*

22. **operis munitione**, 'by the embankment'; *munitio*, the act of fortifying, is used for the actual fortification.

telis, 'projectiles.'

Page 8.

1. **una**, 'the one and only.'

per Sequanos via. The Helvetii had then to make their way through the *pas de l'Écluse* into what is now the department of the Ain. A fort at the upper end of the pass now guards the French frontier.

2. **propter angustias**, see p. 5, l. 13.

4. **eo deprecatore**, 'on his intercession,' 'with him for an intercessor.' For noun instead of participle in ablative absolute see P. § 237.

5. **impetrarent**, sc. *viam* or *veniam eundi*, 'leave to go.'

6. **plurimum poterat**, 'was very influential,' p. 4, l. 1; p. 18, l. 5.

7. **in matrimonium duxerat**, 'had married,' p. 3, l. 23.

9. **novis rebus studebat**, 'was eager for a revolution.'

suo beneficio...obstrictas, 'under an obligation to him,' lit. 'bound by his kindness.'

12. **uti**, p. 5, l. 7. **inter sese**, p. 4, l. 3.

14. **ne...ut**, after an expression of 'precaution' or 'taking care' implied in *obsides dare*, equivalent to *obsidibus datis cavere*, 'to provide by giving hostages': P. § 417, note.

17. **Santonum fines.** The *Santones* dwelt on the right bank of the mouth of the Garonne (department of *Charente Inférieure*). The *Tolosates* (Toulouse) were on both banks of the upper Garonne, and were on the extreme west of the Roman province.

21. **ut...haberet**, 'namely, that it should have,' p. 4, l. 20; p. 11, l. 15.

Page 9.

1. **T. Labienus** was with Caesar all through his ten years' government in Gaul. In B.C. 49, when Caesar was returning to Italy to

contend with Pompey, he left Labienus in command in Cisalpine Gaul. Yet he deserted his cause and joined Pompey.

2. **legatum**, 'his legate,' the technical word for a member of a proconsul's staff. See note on the *legio* p. 6. l. 11.

in Italiam, that is, into Cisalpine Gaul; it was already called Italia in common language, though officially it was not Italy north of the boundary running from the Rubicon to the Macra. See p. 6, l. 5 note.

magnis itineribus, see on p. 6, l. 7.

4. **hiemabant**, 'were still in their winter quarters.' These three legions (7th, 8th and 9th) had been enrolled in the previous year for Caesar's use in his provinces, and by putting them into winter quarters at Aquileia it would seem that he had expected to require them chiefly for Illyricum. Aquileia was a Roman colony, the capital of Venetia, near the head of the Adriatic, and was a great emporium of trade with Illyricum.

5. **qua proximum...per Alpes.** It is not known by what pass Caesar marched these legions. Probably he went by Turin and over Mt Genèvre, though the pass over the lesser St Bernard would have brought him out nearer to Geneva.

7. **Ceutrones et Graioceli et Caturiges.** Tribes living in high valleys of the Graian Alps. They kept their independence till subdued in the time of Augustus.

9. **ab Ocelo...citerioris provinciae,** 'from Ocelum, the last town in the hither province,' i.e. in Gallia Cisalpina. It is not quite certain whether Ocelum was where the modern Oulx is (in the valley of the Doria Riparia) or Uxeau in the Fenestrelles.

11. **die septimo,** 'on the seventh day' after leaving Ocelum. The crossing of the pass would not have taken nearly so long if it had not been for the fighting with the native tribes.

13. **extra provinciam,** 'outside the province,' i.e. the province in Transalpine Gaul.

19. **rogatum,** 'to ask.' P. § 423, note 3.

21—23. **ut...non debuerint.** Though *mittunt*, on which this clause depends, is an *historical* present, the perfect is used, as more exact, in consecutive clauses. P. § 422, note 2.

21. **nostri,** i.e. Roman.

22. **liberi eorum,** for *sui* to correspond with *se* in l. 20; but we have before seen that Caesar is often inclined to use the cases of *is* in *oratio obliqua*, when the reflexive would be more regular; p. 5, l. 26.

Page 10.

2. **certiorem faciunt**, 'inform.'

3. **non facile...prohibere**, 'that they are with difficulty repelling.'

6. **agri solum**, 'their bare land,' 'the surface of their land.' The crops and everything else, they mean, had been destroyed or carried off.

7. **nihil...reliqui**, 'nothing left,' partitive gen. P. § 259.

8. **dum...pervenirent**, 'till they arrived,' see on p. 7, l. 1.

11. **Arar**, 'the Saône.' The Helvetii seem to have crossed somewhere near Matisco (*Macon*).

13. **in utram partem**, 'in which direction.'

14. **iunctis**, 'lashed together,' so as to form a raft or floating bridge.

transibant, 'were in the act of crossing.' They had not all got across, as is shewn immediately.

15. **certior factus est**, l. 2.

18. **de tertia vigilia**, 'in the course of the third watch.' The sense of *de* is 'starting from' such and such defined time, so 'within' that time; cp. *de nocte*, *de die*. The time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four equal portions or watches (*vigiliae*). In the summer these would be short. The 3rd would be from about midnight to two o'clock.

20. **impeditos**, 'encumbered,' 'hampered.' The crossing seems to have been going on all night, and the Tiguri were carrying their goods.

21. **concidit**, strengthened form of *caedo*, 'he cut to pieces.'

22. **in proximas silvas abdiderunt**, 'they hid themselves in the nearest forest,' acc. because of the motion implied in *abdiderunt*.

23. **pagus...Tigurinus** (the place put for the people), 'the inhabitants of the canton of the Tigurini.'

24. **civitas**, 'nation,' as Caesar often uses it.

in quattuor pagos. The two known from Caesar are the *pagus Verbigenus* and the *pagus Tigurinus*. The other two were not named.

Page 11.

2. **L. Cassium...interfecerat.** In the Cimbrian war B.C. 107, see p. 6, l. 19.

3. **sub iugum**, see p. 6, l. 20.

6. **princeps**, 'first,' 'before others.' The adj. *princeps* is used adverbially, that is, it qualifies the verb, P. § 308.

poenas persolvit, 'paid full penalty,' 'was thoroughly punished.'

8. **eius soceri L. Pisonis avum**, 'the grandfather of his father-in-law L. Piso.' Caesar had married in this year (B.C. 59) as his third wife Calpurnia, d. of L. Calpurnius Piso, whose grandfather—also a L. Calpurnius Piso—was consul in B.C. 112, and five years afterwards (B.C. 107) was on the staff (*legatus*) of the consul, L. Cassius Longinus, who was defeated and killed by the Tigurini in the 'Cimbrian' war.

12. **ut...posset**, imperf. subj. dependent on historical present, *curat*. See p. 13, l. 14. P. § 411, note.

faciendum curat, 'causes to be made,' 'sees to the making.' P. § 384.

15. **ut flumen transirent**, 'namely, the crossing of the stream.' See p. 4, l. 20; p. 8, l. 21. P. § 415.

18. **bello Cassiano**, 'in the war in which Cassius was commander,' i.e. in the war referred to in l. 9, in which L. Cassius was defeated by the Tigurini.

19. **egit**, 'spoke,' 'argued'; *agere cum aliquo* is 'to do business with someone' in any way, but it generally refers to the speech or argument used in the transaction.

si pacem...This speech is reported in the third person, that is, it is *oratio obliqua*. Notice the change of tenses from the same speech if it had been given in the first person as it was delivered. The main verbs, which would have been *ibunt...erunt...dedicimus*, become infinitive with accusative *ituros* (esse) *futuros* (esse), *didicisse*. The *si* clauses have imperfect subjunctive instead of present subjunctive or future indicative: *faceret* (for *faciet*), *perseveraret* (for *perseverabit*); *contenderent* (for *contendamus*): subordinate clauses which would have had future perfect indicatives have pluperfect subjunctives, *constituisset* (for *constitueris*), *voluisset* (for *volueris*). Those that would have had present subjunctive have imperfect: *caperet* (for *capiat*), *proderet* (for *prodat*). In relative or causal clauses what would have been perfect or pluperfect indicatives become pluperfect subjunctives: *adortus esset* (for *adortus es*), *constitissent* (for *constitistis*), *transissent* (for *transierant*). Lastly, imperatives are expressed by imperfect subjunctives: *reminisceretur* (for *reminiscere*), *ne tribueret* (for *noli tribuere*), *despiceret* (for *noli despicere*), *ne committeret* (for *noli committere*). P. §§ 459—461.

22. **sin** (for si-nē), 'if on the contrary,' 'but if.' The negative force of *ne* is almost lost, as in the Greek εἰ δὲ μή, 'otherwise.'

Page 12.

2. **quod**, answers to *ob eam rem* in l. 4. 'Just because you have

attacked one canton, when those who had already crossed the stream were unable to help their friends, don't on that account put it down very much to the credit of your valour, or think lightly of us.'

4. **suae magno opere virtuti tribuere.** The use of *tribuo* without an accusative is to be noticed. The adverb *magno opere* stands in the place of the usual accusative, that is, Caesar uses an idiom 'to attribute greatly,' instead of 'to attribute something great.' So *multum* and *plurimum* are used with this verb adverbially, cp. *ei plurimum tribuamus a quo plurimum diligimur.*

5. **ipsos**, used for a reflexive pronoun, referring to the speaker, because *se despiceret* would be ambiguous, i.e. it *might* mean 'despise himself.' P. § 466; p. 19, l. 2.

se ita...didicisse...ut...niterentur, 'that they had so learnt from their ancestors as to carry on their warfare by valour rather than craft or by dependence upon ambuscades.' But the sentence (though the sense is clear) is illogically constructed. The last clause requires *et magis virtute quam insidiis niterentur.* Or it might have been quite clear if *contenderent* had been omitted,...*ut magis virtute quam dolo aut insidiis niterentur.* But Caesar, noting down heads of a speech briefly, mixes up two constructions. The whole *ut* clause depends on the *ita*: after *didicisse* by itself we might have had *contendere* and *niti.*

9. **internecione**, 'annihilation,' properly 'mutual slaughter.'

10. **memoriam proderet**, 'hand down a tradition,' 'be remembered in history.'

11. **eo...quod**, P. § 425.

12. **dubitationis**, P. § 259, partitive genitive.

13. **eo gravius...quo minus**, that he felt the more indignation in proportion as the occurrence had not been brought about by anything that the Roman people had done. P. § 454 note 2.

15. **qui si...cavere**, 'for if it (the Roman people) had been conscious of having inflicted some wrong, it would not have been difficult to take precautions. **alicuius**, 'some' as opposed to 'none,'—some definite wrong. **fuisse** in oratio obliqua for *fuisset* in oratio recta.

16. **eo deceptum**, sc. *esse*, 'that it had been misled by the very fact that.'

commissum...quare, 'it was not aware that it had done anything for which he had cause to fear.'

19. **num...memoriam deponere posse**, 'could he forget?' In *oratio recta* the question would be in the 1st person, 'can I forget?' Questions in the first or third person are expressed in *oratio obliqua* by

the infinitive, not subjunctive, as questions in the second person are. P. § 463.

20. **eo invito**, 'against his (Caesar's) will.' For *eo* in place of a reflexive pronoun to avoid ambiguity, see p. 5, l. 26; p. 9, l. 22.

24. **impune iniurias tulisse**, 'had not been punished for the injuries done.' The words to be taken together are *impune ferre*, 'to carry a thing with impunity.' So, 'to get off for doing a thing,' the thing done being expressed by the accusative, cp. *gentesque subactas vix impune feres*, 'and you will hardly get off with impunity for having conquered the nations.' *illud haud inultum ferent*, 'they shall not get off with impunity for doing that.' **eodem pertinere**, 'pointed to the same thing,' 'was to the same purport.'

25. **consuesse** for *consuevisse*.

quo...doleant, 'in order that men may feel all the greater pain.' P. § 453.

27. **pro scelere eorum**, 'in proportion to their crime.'

Page 13.

3. **uti**, p. 5, l. 7.

4. **de iniuriis**, 'in regard to the injuries,' 'for the injuries.'

7. **ita...institutos...uti...consuerint** (*consueverint*). See the construction in p. 12, l. 5.

9. **eius...testem**, referring again to their victory over Cassius in B.C. 107.

11. **castra...movent.** As the Romans always made a regular camp at any place they stayed, even for a night, *movere castra* was equivalent to 'march.'

12. **equitatum.** The Roman cavalry was at this time always levied from the provinces, see note on the *legio*, p. 6, l. 11.

14. **coactum habebat**, 'had collected and possessed.'

praemittit, qui videant, 'sends them in advance to see.' The historic present with present subjunctive, cp. p. 11, l. 12. *qui* expressing purpose, P. § 453.

15. **faciant**, subj. of indirect question, P. § 43.

16. **cupidius**, 'too eagerly.' P. § 310. **alieno loco**, 'in an unfavourable position,' properly 'in a position pertaining to' or 'suiting another.' Notice that *in* is omitted, as often with *locus* and similar words. The ablative is rather descriptive than locative, 'the position being unsuitable.'

19. **sublati**, 'uplifted,' 'elated' (*tollo*).

21. **novissimo agmine**, 'with their rear-guard,' 'on their rear.' Notice: *exercitus*, 'an army of trained men' (*exerceo*); *acies*, 'an army in battle array' ('on edge' cp. *ac-er*, *ac-us*, *ac-uo*); *agmen*, 'an army on the march' (*agere*).

23. **continebat**, 'kept them back,' 'held them in.' **in praesentia**, 'for the present.' Probably ablative singular feminine, not neut. plural.

Page 14.

1. **ita...uti**, 'in such a way that.'

dies, acc. of time during which, P. § 278.

3. **quinis aut senis milibus passuum**, 'five or six miles.' The distributive numerals used with substantives of plural form, e.g. *milia*. P. § 313, note 1. Note that the expression for a Roman 'mile' is either *mille passuum* or *mille passus*, 'a thousand paces.' A *passus* is 5 feet. But the Roman foot was slightly shorter than the English foot (·97), so that

5000 feet Roman = 4850 feet English.
An English mile = 5280 ,, ,,
A Roman ,, = 4850 ,, ,,

That is, a Roman mile is 430 feet (143 yards 1 foot) shorter than an English mile.

quinis aut senis, abl. of comparison after *amplius*, which sometimes however is constructed without ablative or *quam*. P. § 314.

interesset, impers. 'there was an interval.'

6. **publice**, 'as a state,' not certain private traders among them. **flagitare**, 'kept demanding,' the historic infinitive for the imperfect indicative, to express continuous and repeated action, or only for the sake of vividness, P. § 372.

propter frigora, 'on account of the coldness of the climate.' This can only be in comparison with Italy; though perhaps as the country was not so well cleared of forest then as now the seasons may have been more backward.

7. **ut ante dictum est**, 'as I have said before,' p. 2, l. 7.

11. **uti**, 'to avail himself of.' **propterea...quod**, p. 3, l. 25. **minus**, 'less' than he would otherwise have done, and so almost equal to *non*.

12. **ab Arare**. The Helvetii were quitting the valley of the Saône and traversing the higher ground towards Bibracte (*Autun*), so that Caesar was obliged to get away from the corn barges coming up the river.

13. **diem ex die ducere**, 'kept postponing from day to day.' That is, they promised to bring the corn, but always put it off to another day. **ducere...dicere**. See l. 6.

14. **conferri, comportari**, true present infinitives, 'that it was being collected, that it was being carted.'

15. **diem...quo die.** Caesar is fond of repeating the substantive with the relative, see p. 5, l. 12; p. 24, l. 18. The soldiers received a fixed allowance of corn, both auxiliaries and legionary soldiers, but to the former it was in addition to their pay, to the latter it was deducted from the pay.

17. **copiam**, 'number.'

18. **qui...praeerat**, 'who was their chief magistrate,' lit. 'who was at the head of the chief magistracy.'

vergobretum, 'judge.' This Celtic word is found on coins, and two old Irish words supply the two parts,—*verg*, 'effective' and *breth*, 'judgment.' The giving decisions or dooms on disputed points would naturally be the office of the chief magistrate.

22. **posset**, sc. *frumentum*, 'corn.'

tam necessario...tam propinquis hostibus. The first may be called an ablative of time, the second of attendant circumstances, though both in a way may be classed under the second head, 'at such a crisis, with the enemy so near at hand.' *necessario* of anything close and pressing, 'at a time of such pressure.'

24. **praesertim cum**, 'and that though.'

magna ex parte, 'to a great extent.' P. § 286.

26. **quod sit destitutus**, 'of having been deceived,' 'that he has been left in the lurch.' Subj. because the thought and words of the speaker are represented, not the reason given by the writer, though in this case both writer and speaker are the same.

Page 15.

1. **tum demum**, 'then at length,' 'then, and not till then.'

2—16. **esse...tacuisse.** Notice that in this 'reported speech' the present and perfect tenses are used throughout, not the imperfect and pluperfect; by this means the speech though in *oratio obliqua* is presented more vividly, and nearer to the actual words used.

2. **proponit**, 'makes avowal of.'

4. **privatim**, 'in their private capacity,' 'as private persons.'

5. **deterrere, ne...conferant**, 'frighten the people from contributing.' P. § 417.

7. **praestare**, impers. '(they urge) that it is better.' *praestare* depends on some word of urging or persuading implied in *deterrere*. **iam**, 'any longer.' **obtinere**, 'hold,' 'maintain.'

9. **neque dubitare**, 'and (they said) they have no doubt.' **quin... sint erepturi.** P. § 422; p. 3, l. 26.

11. **nostra**, i.e. the 'Roman' plans, see p. 9, l. 21.

13—15. **quin etiam...fecerit**, 'nay more, in having under compulsion informed Caesar of a matter of great urgency, he is fully aware at what great risk he has done so.'

16. **tacuisse**, 'he had kept quiet about it,' the perfect infinitive for what would have been the perfect indicative in oratio recta *quam diu poteram* **tacui**; but **intellego** *quanto cum periculo* **fecerim.**

19. **iactari**, 'to be discussed.'

20. **quaerit...dixerat**, 'asks him questions about what he said at the meeting,' not 'asks him what he said,' for that would have required the subjunctive.

Page 16.

1. **summa audacia...gratia**, ablatives of quality with epithet. P. § 234.

3. **rerum novarum**, p. 8, l. 9. **complures annos**, acc. of time during which, P. § 278. **portoria**, lit. 'payments for carriage,' 'import and export duties.' **vectigalia** (*veho, vectus*) 'tribute' or 'taxes' paid to the state.

5. **redempta habere**, 'he has purchased and retained.' The taxes and dues were farmed. Some man or company of men paid a fixed sum to the state, and recouped himself and made what profit he could by collecting the taxes. The man who did so was said 'to purchase' (*redimere*) the taxes: the state was said to 'farm them out' (*locare*). The same thing was done at Rome in regard to several of the provinces.

illo licente, 'when he bid.' The contracts for collecting the dues, it seems then, were put up to auction for the highest bidder.

6. **rem familiarem**, 'his private property,' lit. 'property of his establishment.'

7. **ad largiendum**, 'for distributing largesse.' P. § 375.

9. **alere**, 'maintain.' **domi**, 'in his own country.'

11. **huius potentiae causa**, 'for the sake of supporting this power.' *potentia* is generally used of excessive or unconstitutional power, as opposed to *auctoritas* or *potestas*. **in Biturigibus**, 'among the Bituriges,' 'in the country of the Bituriges,' a people living in Western Gaul between the Loire and the Garonne, who have left their name in that of the town of Bourges.

matrem...collocasse, 'had given his mother in marriage.'

13. **sororem ex matre**, 'his sister by his mother's side,' 'his half-sister.'

14. **nuptum**, 'in marriage,' lit. 'to marry,' supine of *nubo*.

15. **cupere**, with dative, 'to be desirous of someone's welfare,' on the analogy of *consulere alicui*. It is a rare construction.

16. **suo nomine**, 'on his own account.'

18. **in antiquum locum**, 'into his old position.'

19. **si quid accidat Romanis**, 'if any disaster should befall the Romans.' The phrase *si quid accidat* applied to a person meant 'if he should die.'

21. **imperio populi Romani**, 'under the rule of the Roman people.' Abl. of circumstance, 'so long as the Roman people are supreme.'

24, 25. **quod proelium...esset factum**, 'in regard to the cavalry defeat which had been sustained a few days before.' **paucis ante diebus**, ablative of time how long before. *ante* is adverbial. P. § 280.

27. **auxilio**, 'as an aid,' 'to the aid of.' Dative of purpose. P. § 226.

Page 17.

2. **quod**, 'the apparent fact that' the various reasons influencing Caesar are expressed by a series of clauses beginning with *quod* and the subjunctive, because the reasons given are not his as the historian but of the person whose thoughts the historian is giving (in this case himself). P. § 426, note 2.

3. **dandos curasset**, 'that he had seen to a mutual interchange of hostages,' cp. p. 11, l. 12.

4. **injussu suo et civitatis**, 'without orders from himself (Caesar) or the state (of the Sequani).' The possessive pronoun is equivalent to the genitive.

5. **ipsis**, i.e. the Sequani. **a magistratu**, that is, by Liscus, see c. 17.

7. **animadverteret**, 'should punish.' *animadvertere*, 'to turn the attention to,' 'to notice,' is frequently used to mean 'to notice for the purpose of punishing.'

9. **quod...cognoverat**, 'the fact, namely, that he was well acquainted with.' Caesar now speaks in his own person, and uses therefore the indicative.

12. **ne...offenderet, verebatur**. P. § 417, note 4.

14. **conaretur**, the subjunctive after *priusquam* because it is not merely a question of time but of waiting to form a judgment. P. §§ 431,

432. Some later writers, however, always use the subjunctive with these adverbs, because a certain mental condition seems always attached to them, i.e. some idea of deliberation or hesitation may be more or less remotely joined to them.

15. **cotidianis**, 'in everyday use,' 'ordinary.'

16. **C. Valerium Procillum.** Though a Gaul this man's father, C. Valerius Cabarus, had been made a Roman citizen, and, as was usual, took the name and praenomen of the propraetor C. Valerius Flaccus [B.C. 83], who had procured him that privilege.

17. **cui...habebat**, 'in whom he had complete confidence in all respects.'

19. **ipso**, sc. Divitiacus.

22. **sine eius offensione...vel ipse**, 'that without giving any offence to him (Divitiacus) he (Caesar) may either pass sentence himself, after hearing the case, or order the state to pass one.'

animi is objective genitive.

Page 18.

2. **ne quid...statueret**, 'not to pass any very severe sentence on his brother.' P. § 417.

3—9. **scire se.** The translation of this paragraph is rendered rather difficult by the fact that in English it is impossible to distinguish clearly between the personal and reflexive pronoun of the third person. **se...ipse...suam** refer to Divitiacus, **ille** to Dumnorix. Perhaps it would best show the sense to turn it into *oratio recta*:

'I know these allegations to be true, and no one is more grieved at that fact than myself; for whereas I used to enjoy great influence both in my own state and in the rest of Gaul, and he had very little owing to his youth, he became powerful by my means, and used these resources and this power not merely to lessen my popularity, but I might almost say to my ruin. However I am influenced both by natural affection for a brother, and by the sentiment of the common people. For if you, Caesar, inflict any severity upon him while I hold the place in your friendship which I now hold, no one will believe that it was not done with my approbation; the result of which will be that the affections of the whole of Gaul will be alienated from me.'

3. **nec quenquam**, P. § 323.

5. **plurimum...minimum...posset**, for an adverbial construction with *possum* see p. 8, l. 6. **domi**, 'at home,' i.e. in his own state.

7. **nervis**, 'sinews' (νεῦρα), and so any strength; cp. '*sinews* of war.'

8. **ad minuendam**, P. § 379. **sed** = *sed etiam.*

10. **si quid...accidisset**, p. 16, l. 19. **a Caesare**, 'by Caesar,' abl. of agent with *ab*, as though *si quid...accidisset* had been a passive verb.

13. **futurum** (*esse*), **uti**, 'it would come to pass that.' For *uti* see p. 5, l. 7.

16. **rogat...faciat**, 'begs him to make an end.' Words of asking and desiring and others take the subjunctive in subordinate clauses with or without *ut*.

17. **tanti**, 'of such high value,' 'so weighty.' P. § 257.

19. **condonet**, 'gives up to' i.e. 'pardons for the sake of his wish and prayers.'

22. **proponit**, 'puts before him,' 'explains to him.'

monet, ut, P. § 417. **in reliquum tempus**, 'for the future.'

24. **Dumnorigi**, dat. of person affected; **ponit** has almost the sense of *dat* or *addit.*

Page 19.

2. **sub monte.** The mountain is supposed by some to be a hill called *Mt Tauffrin.*

ab ipsius castris, 'from his (Caesar's) camp.' For *ipsius* instead of reflexive see p. 12, l. 5.

3. **in circuitu**, 'by a winding path.'

4. **qui cognoscerent, misit**, 'he sent some men to find out,' relative expressing purpose, P. § 453.

5. **de tertia vigilia**, see p. 10, l. 18.

6. **legatum pro praetore**, 'who was a member of his staff with the rank of praetor.' After a man had been consul or praetor, his *imperium* (command) was sometimes extended without the office, he was then said to be *pro consule*, *pro praetore*, 'in the place of,' 'instead of' consul or praetor. Sometimes though a man had not been *praetor*, the Senate gave him the honorary rank when serving as a *legatus.*

7. **cognoverant**, 'had reconnoitred.'

8. **quid sui consilii sit**, 'what his design is.' The genitive is a partitive one, and is used idiomatically for a nominative because such a plan could only be really a part of a whole policy; though this distinction must not be pressed too far. That was the origin of the idiom, but it came to be used mechanically. In another place (7, 77) it is in oratio recta, *quid ergo mei consilii est?* 'What then is my advice?'

9. **de quarta vigilia**, 'in the 4th watch,' just before sunrise, see p. 10, l. 18.

11. **rei...peritissimus**, 'of the greatest experience in campaigns,' 'exceedingly skilled in military affairs.' P. § 262.

12. **habebatur**, 'was considered.'

L. Sullae, probably in his campaign in Greece and Asia B.C. 87—4.

in M. Crassi, sc. *exercitu*. Crassus fell in Parthia B.C. 53, but a considerable part of his army escaped, being led off by Cassius.

14. **prima luce**, 'at day-break,' ablative of time.

15. **mille...quingentis**, somewhat less than an English mile and a half, see p. 14, l. 3.

17. **ipsius**, i.e. Caesar's, see l. 2.

18. **equo admisso**, 'at full gallop,' lit. 'his horse having been given its head' or 'let go.'

20. **voluerit**, oblique, as being part of Considius's report, who said *quem voluisti*.

22. **subducit**, 'leads up from the lower ground.'

23. **ne...committeret**, 'that is to say, not to join battle'; cp. p. 8, l. 21, p. 4, l. 20.

24. **ipsius**, 'Caesar's.'

Page 20.

3. **abstinebat**, 'was refraining from.'

multo denique die, 'not till late in the day.'

5. **castra movisse**, 'had broken up their camp,' 'had marched away'; p. 13, l. 11.

6. **pro viso**, 'as though he had seen it.'

7. **consuerat**, *consueverat*. **intervallo**, p. 19, l. 15.

9. **postridie eius diei**, 'on the morrow of that day,' 'next day.' *postridie*, properly a substantive, can be followed by genitive.

9. **quod omnino...oporteret**, 'because there were only two days before the time at which the distribution of the corn to the army was due.' Lit. 'when it was due to measure out.' Cp. p. 14, l. 15.

11. **a Bibracte** (near *Autun*), has only genitive, see l. 14.

12. **copiosissimo**, 'most richly furnished with supplies.'

13. **rei frumentariae**, dat. of advantage, after *prospiciendum*, 'that he must take measures for the supply of corn.'

15. **decurionis**. There were 3 *decuriones* ('captains') to each *turma* or *decuria* ('squadron') of cavalry. In the old times when 300 Roman cavalry were attached to each legion, the *decuria* or *turma*

consisted of thirty men. Now that the cavalry consisted of foreign troops and was in greater numbers, no doubt the *turma* (now called *ala*) was different in number too; but the old term for the officer or captain was retained.

18. **superioribus locis occupatis**, 'though they had seized the high ground on the previous day.'

21. **a novissimo agmine**, 'on our rear.'

23. **id animum advertit**, 'noticed it,' the two words are treated as a transitive verb governing an accusative case.

Page 21.

1. **qui sustineret**, 'to resist,' 'to check.' P. §§ 423, 453.

ipse...triplicem aciem instruxit, 'Caesar himself meanwhile got into order a triple line of battle consisting of the four legions of veterans half-way up the slope.'

The legions were drawn up by cohorts, the cohorts by maniples. As each legion consisted of ten cohorts, there were forty cohorts to draw up. The first line consisted of sixteen, the second and third of twelve cohorts each. Each cohort consisted of three maniples, standing in line with each other, but with an interval of about four feet between them, in which the centurions stood. Between the cohorts there was a wider interval, almost equal to the face of the cohort, through which a beaten or wearied cohort might retire, or one of the lines behind advance and form a new first line. The cohorts in these lines were usually stationed in what was called the *quincunx* or group of five, so that the rear line covered the intervals of the front line.

```
... ... ... ...     ... ... ... ...     ... ... ... ...     ... ... ... ...
   ... ... ...         ... ... ...         ... ... ...         ... ... ...
... ... ...         ... ... ...         ... ... ...         ... ... ...
```

In this case the enemy were below them and the front rank began the battle by hurling their *pila* upon them in a volley. The files of the maniples which were ten deep must have had some arrangement whereby those in the front knelt or bent down to allow those behind to hurl their *pila* over their heads; and it was not till these had been discharged that the charge with swords took place.

4. **quas...proxime conscripserat**, 'which he had recently enrolled in Gallia Cisalpina,' p. 9, l. 3.

7. **in superiore acie**, 'in the line-of-battle on the higher ground,' i.e. the two legions on the ridge, l. 3.

8. **Helvetii...contulerunt.** The Helvetii made a laager with their wagons, in which they placed their baggage for security.

10. **confertissima acie**, 'by taking up very close order.' Like 'forming square to resist cavalry.'

11. **phalange**. The *phalanx* was a term borrowed from the Macedonian tactics. It consisted in massing men together 16 deep, or more, trusting to the weight thus secured to break the enemy's line. The disadvantage of it was that only those on the outside could really fight, the rest were so closely packed that they could not use their weapons. In a small way a 'bully' at football will give some idea of the movements of such a body of men.

sub primam...successerunt, 'they advanced so as to be close under our front rank.'

14. **suo**, sc. *equo*.

16. **in loco superiore**, 'being on higher ground.'

17. **perfregerunt**, 'shattered,' 'dislocated.' The phalanx fell into disorder and was then useless.

18. **Gallis...impedimento**, predicative dative, 'it was for a great hindrance to the Gauls,' 'it was a great hindrance to the Gauls.' P. § 225 note. **ad pugnam**, 'with a view to fighting,' 'in fighting.'

19. **pluribus...colligatis**, the men were so closely packed together that a *pilum* sometimes pierced two overlapping shields; in doing this the iron point got bent and could not be pulled out, and so two men found themselves locked together and had no resource but to drop their shields.

22. **multi ut...praeoptarent**, 'so that in many cases they preferred to let the shield drop from the hand.' *ut* is put second in the clause that the emphasis may fall on *multi*. For *ut* without any demonstrative such as *adeo*, *ita*, etc. see p. 5, l. 16; P. § 421 note.

24. **nudo**, 'unprotected' by the shield.

25. **pedem referre**, 'to give ground,' 'to retire,' not 'to fly' (*tergum vertere*), see p. 22, l. 14.

circiter is adverbial.

26. **mille passuum**, 'a mile,' see p. 14, l. 3. In certain cases *mille* is used as an indeclinable substantive, so *mille militum* (Nep.), *mille nummum* (Cic.), *mille hominum* (Cic.), *mille equitum* (Caes.).

capto, 'having been occupied,' i.e. by the Helvetii.

27. **succedentibus nostris**, 'as our men were following them up.'

Page 22.

1. **agmen...claudebant**, 'were closing the enemy's column of march,' 'were bringing up the enemy's rear.'

2. **praesidio**, see p. 21, l. 18. **ex itinere**, 'as the Romans were marching forward,' 'while our men were in order of march,'—i.e. not in fighting order.

3. **latere aperto**, 'on the right flank,' on the side not covered by the shield held in the left hand. **circumvenire**, 'began getting round us,' 'outflanking us.'

5. **conversa signa...intulerunt**, 'they faced about and so charged in two directions.' *ferre signa* is 'to advance,' the standards being fixed in the ground during a halt. The *conversa* can only refer to the 3rd line, the 1st and 2nd were already facing the enemy.

7. **ut...resisteret**, 'to check men whom they had already beaten and dislodged,' but who were returning to the fight.

9. **ancipiti**, 'double,' 'in two directions.'

14. **aversum**, 'with his back turned,' 'in flight,' see p. 21, l. 25.

15. **ad multam noctem**, 'till late at night,' 'far into the night.' So *multo die*, p. 20, l. 3. **ad impedimenta**, 'near the baggage.'

16. **pro vallo**, 'instead of an earthwork,' such as the Romans always threw up round a camp.

19. **subiciebant**, 'kept throwing from below.'

23. **eaque tota nocte**, 'and through the whole of that night.' The ablative is used rather than the accusative because it is not so much the duration of time that is thought of as the limits of a period, 'from one end of the night to the other.' **continenter ierunt**, 'marched without a halt.'

24. **nullam partem**, 'during no part of the night.' P. § 278.

in fines Lingonum, 'into the territory of the Lingones.' The Helvetii retreated northward across a spur of the Vosges towards the modern *Tonnerre* on the river *Yonne*.

Page 23.

3. **ne...iuvarent**, 'ordering them not to assist them,' the notion of commanding is implied in *litteras nuntiosque misit*. P. § 417.

4. **qui si iuvissent**, 'and if he found that they had helped them'; the pluperfect is used for what would in the future be a past occurrence, 'if they had helped them (when he came).'

8. **de deditione**, 'to offer an unconditional surrender.'

10. **atque**, 'and when,' *atque* continues the construction with *cum*. Caesar sends word by the envoys to the Helvetii that they were to remain where they were till he came.

13. **qui ad eos perfugissent**, 'such as had deserted to them.' The subjunctive both because it is oblique (representing what Caesar said) and because it is indefinite, 'whatever deserters there were,' he does not know how many or who they were.

14. **conquiruntur et conferuntur**, 'are searched for and collected.'

16. **Verbigenus**, see on p. 10, l. 24.

18. **quod...existimarent**, oblique because it represents the thoughts of the fugitives implied in *spe salutis inducti*. **dediticiorum**, see l. 8. *dediticii* in Roman law language were prisoners surrendered entirely into the hands of the conquerors, without any rights.

20. **ad Rhenum**, '*towards* the Rhine,' they did not reach the Rhine.

23. **sibi**, 'in his (Caesar's) eyes.'

24. **purgati esse**, 'to be held free of guilt,' i.e. of complicity with the movement of the Helvetii.

in hostium numero habuit, 'treated as enemies,' that is, he killed them all, or at least sold them as slaves. *numero* in this phrase means 'place,' 'category,' cp. *loco* in l. 5.

Page 24.

3. **omnibus frugibus amissis.** The Helvetii had burnt all the corn they could not carry with them, p. 5, l. 2.

4. **quo famem tolerarent**, 'wherewith to ward off starvation.' P. § 452. *tolerare famem*, 'to support hunger,' 'to hold up against it.'

5. **ut...copiam facerent**, 'to offer them a supply of corn.' P. § 417.

7. **ea maxime ratione**, 'for the following consideration above all others.'

10. **finitimi Galliae.** P. § 218.

12. **petentibus Aeduis...ut...collocarent**, 'on the petition of the Aedui that they might settle the Boii in their territory.' Abl. absolute, though it might also be the dative after *concessit*.

quod...cogniti erant, this is the reason Caesar assigns to their request, not that which the Aedui gave, or it would have been *essent*. **egregia virtute**, abl. of quality with adj. 'of remarkable valour.' P. § 234.

14. **quosque...receperunt**, 'and whom they admitted to a position of legal rights and liberty the same as their own.'

parem...atque, 'equal to,' 'the same as.'

15. **erant**, with this must be supplied *conditionem qua*.

17. **litteris Graecis**, 'in Greek letters,' but not in the Greek language. The use of the Greek alphabet was very widely spread, and the Helvetii very likely had none of their own.

18. **quibus in tabulis**, for the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, cp. p. 5, l. 12; p. 14, l. 15.

nominatim, not 'by name' as though every individual were named, but 'precisely,' 'fully.' **ratio confecta erat**, 'an account had been made up.'

20. **quarum...summa erat**, 'of which categories (or 'divisions') the sum total was.' The items are then given separately, *milia* being in apposition to *summa*.

21. **capitum**, 'of persons,' 'of souls,' gen. after *milia*.

22. The **Tulingi**, **Latobrigi** (sometimes written *Latovici*), were Germanic; the **Raurici**, a tribe living on the upper Rhine.

24. **ad milia XCII**, 'to the number of 92 thousand.'

summa...fuerunt, 'the total of them all amounted to.' Plural verb with collective noun, P. § 199. 3.

25. **eorum...milium**, 'the total of those who returned home was a total of 110,000.'

26. **censu habito**, 'a census having been taken,' 'when they were counted.'

27. **numerus** has two genitives.

Page 25.

2. **gratulatum**, 'to congratulate him.' Supine expressing purpose after verb of motion. P. § 386.

4. **Helvetiorum...Romani**, a subjective and an objective genitive, both depending on the same word *iniuriis*, 'the wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people.'

5. **repetisset**, sc. Caesar. **ex usu**, 'to the advantage of,' 'fortunately for.'

6. **terrae Galliae**, 'the territory of Gaul,' upon which the Helvetii had been intruders. Note that though the English idiom conceals the fact, **Galliae** is in apposition to **terrae**, not dependent on it like *vox libertatis*, 'the word liberty.'

7. **florentissimis rebus**, 'when they were in a state of the greatest prosperity.' The legates mean to imply that the Helvetii had no excuse for their movement, being in a state of great prosperity at home, which yet made their movement all the more formidable.

9. **imperio**, 'supremacy' over all Gaul. **domicilio**, dat. 'for a settlement.' **ex magna copia**, 'from a large choice,' i.e. of places.

12. **stipendiarias**, 'subject to tribute,' the opposite meaning to the English stipendiary, i.e. receiving a stipend.

14. **Caesaris voluntate**, 'with Caesar's free consent,' an ablative of circumstance in which a thing is done; p. 30, l. 19 n.

15. **ex communi consensu**, 'as a body,' 'unanimously.'

17. **iureiurando...inter se sanxerunt**, 'they bound themselves by the interchange of a solemn oath.'

ne...enuntiaret, 'that no one should let out what was settled,' i.e. at the assembly.

nisi quibus...esset, 'except to those to whom they should be authorised to do so by the whole body.'

20. **qui ante fuerant**, 'who had been with him before,' some print a comma after **Caesarem**, in which case *ad = apud*. But it seems better on the whole to join *ad Caesarem* with *reverterunt*, though *qui ante fuerant* is very peculiar and elliptical.

21. **cum eo agere**, 'to discuss with him.'

22. **ea re**, i.e. the private interview.

Page 26.

1. **Caesari ad pedes**, 'at Caesar's feet,' the dative is not possessive, but indicates the object or person affected by the action *sese ad pedes proiecerunt*.

non minus, this sentence in *oratio obliqua* depends on some verb of saying understood from *ad pedes proiecerunt*, 'they threw themselves at his feet and protested that, etc.'

7. **principatum**, 'supremacy,' 'hegemony.' It does not seem to imply any internal government, but the direction of the foreign policy and war-making of the inferior tribes.

10. **factum esse uti**, 'it had come to pass that.'

11. **mercede**, 'by means of pay,' 'as mercenaries.'

14. **adamassent**, 'had fallen in love with,' 'had become enamoured of.' **plures**, 'still more.'

16. **clientes**, 'their dependants,' the inferior tribes which followed their lead in war.

semel atque iterum, 'more than once.'

18. **omnem...amisisse**. This is no doubt an exaggeration.

20. **populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia**, 'owing to their ties

of hospitality and friendship with the Roman people,' by being admitted to be *hospites* (πρόξενοι) and *amici* of the Roman people. When the Romans gave any state the title of *amici*, they were understood to guarantee it from attack from without. Therefore this title would enhance the influence of the Aedui among their neighbours, as being dangerous people to attack. Some treaty with the Aedui had been made as early as B.C. 121.

23. **iureiurando civitatem obstringere**, 'to bind their tribe by an oath.' **sese**, 'that they,' i.e. the tribesmen.

25. **neque recusaturos quo minus...essent**, 'and that they would not refuse to remain for ever under their rule and military command.' *recusare* from its sense of 'making difficulties' is followed by *quominus*. **illorum** refers to the Germans.

Page 27.

1. **Romam ad senatum venisse**, 'had come to visit the Senate in Rome,' lit. 'had come to Rome to the Senate.' The defeat of the Aedui seems to have been in B.C. 60 (Cic. *ad Att.* I. 19): and Divitiacus on his visit to Rome was entertained by Cicero, who questioned him about the Druids (Cic. *de Div.* I § 89). **postulatum**, see p. 25, l. 2 n.

3. **peius...accidisse**, 'it had turned out more unfortunately for.'

7. **de altera parte tertia**, 'from another third.'

9. **Harudum**, nothing is known of the *Harudes*; they may be the same as the *Charydes* mentioned by Augustus in his account of his reign on the monument at Ancyra. They are there classed with the Cimbri, who came from about Jutland. The Harudes at this time seem to have been settled near the Lake of Constance.

10. **quibus...pararentur**, 'for whom land and a place of residence had to be provided,' lit. 'were being provided.'

11. **paucis annis**, 'within the next few years.' Abl. of time within which. P. § 277.

14. **hanc**, 'that prevailing here,' i.e. in Gaul.

17. **imperare ... poscere ... edere**, frequentative infinitives, 'was carrying on the government,' 'was continually demanding,' 'was inflicting signal punishments and tortures.'

18. **nobilissimi cuiusque**, 'of all the noblest men.' *quisque* with a superlative is best translated in English by a plural.

in eos...edere, 'was inflicting upon their persons (lit. was producing in regard to them) all kinds of torture.' *omnia exempla cruciatusque*

is a kind of hendiadys for *omnia exempla cruciatus*. But *exempla edere*, 'to inflict exemplary punishment,' might stand by itself.

19. **ad nutum**, 'at his command, 'at his nod,' i.e. 'instantly.'

21. **iracundum**, 'hot-tempered.'

22. **nisi si quid...auxilii**, 'unless some support is found in Caesar and the Roman people.'

nisi si is a pleonasm not uncommon especially in the earlier writers, such as Terence. Here it is perhaps suggested by the frequency of the combination *si quid*, which comes to be regarded as a single word = 'some.'

23. **omnibus Gallis** is dative with gerundive. P. § 222.

24. **esse faciendum**, 'have to do,' put vividly for the future 'will have to do.'

ut...emigrent, 'namely emigrate,' this is a consecutive subjunctive, and is used to *explain* a previous clause or word. Cp. *totum in eo est, ut tibi imperes*, 'all depends on this, namely, that you practise self-command,' or, 'namely, your self-command.'

26—27. **petant...experiantur** depend upon *ut*, in the same construction as *emigrent*, continuing the explanation of what they will have to do.

27. **non dubitare**, 'he (Divitiacus) had no doubt.' For **quin** after a negatived verb of doubting see P. § 422.

30. **recenti victoria**, that is, by his recent victory over the Helvetii.

Page 28.

1. **traducatur**, throughout this speech in *oratio obliqua* (reported speech) the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses referring to the past, in those referring to the future the present or imperfect subjunctive.

2. **Ariovisti iniuria**, subjective genitive, 'injury inflicted by Ariovistus.'

5. **unos**, 'alone,' the plural of *unus* is used with nouns that have no singular, and with the sense of 'only,' 'alone.'

9. **respondere...permanere**, historic infinitives used for vividness in place of imperfect indicative. P. § 372.

11. **omnino**, 'at all.' **exprimere**, 'extract from them.'

12. **hoc**, 'in this respect.'

16. **horrerent**, 'shudder at,' 'fear.' In this sense it is a transitive verb.

17. **Sequanis**, 'by the Sequani,' dative with *perferendi*. See p. 27, l. 23 n.

21. **animos**, 'courage.'

23. **curae**, dative. P. § 225.

beneficio, 'by the kindness which he had done to Ariovistus.' This is explained by c. 35. Ariovistus had obtained recognition from the Senate during Caesar's consulship B.C. 59.

Page 29.

3. **secundum ea**, 'following on these events,' 'besides these circumstances.' **multae res**, 'many considerations.' **quare**, 'why,' 'for which.'

5. **fratres consanguineosque**, 'brothers and kinsmen,' the first was a complimentary title perhaps, but by the second there seems to be implied some notion of a special blood relationship between the two peoples, and this may have rested on some real tradition of a Celtic strain in Roman blood. One of the conjectures as to the derivation of *Roma* is the Celtic *rouma*, 'a river.' Cp. our own *Romsey* and *Romney*. See p. 26, l. 20 n.

6. **saepenumero**, the alliance had lasted a long time (see p. 26, l. 20 n.), and these complimentary titles had been no doubt constantly used.

9. **in tanto imperio populi Romani**, 'considering the greatness of the Empire of the Roman people.'

11—13. **paulatim...venire**. This whole clause forms the subject of the infinitive *esse* understood after *videbat*. 'That the Germans should become gradually habituated to crossing the Rhine, and that a vast multitude of them should come into Gaul, he saw to be dangerous to the Roman people.'

13—17. **neque sibi...temperaturos...quin...exirent**, 'nor would refrain from issuing out and invading the Province.' By *provincia* he means the first Roman province in South-Eastern Gaul, called in more modern times *Provence*.

16. **Cimbri Teutonique**. The invaders from Northern Germany or Jutland who had after many years of struggle been destroyed by Marius at Aquae Sextiae in B.C. 102 and on the Raudian plains in North Italy in B.C. 101.

18. **Rhodanus**, '*only* the Rhone.' The Rhone as it first flows from the lake of Geneva eastward formed the northern boundary of the 'Province.'

19. **quibus rebus...putabat**, 'and these possibilities he thought ought to be provided against with all possible speed.'

20. **spiritus...arrogantiam**, 'lofty ideas...presumption.'

24. **qui...postularent**, 'to demand of him.' P. § 423 note 3, § 453.

25. **medium utriusque**, 'about half-way between them both.'

27. **agere**, 'to discuss.'

28. **opus**, in apposition to *quid*, 'if he stood in need of anything from Caesar.'

venturum fuisse, 'he would have come,' in *oratio recta* it would have been *venissem* or *veniam*:

(1) si quid mihi opus fuisset, venissem;

(2) si quid mihi opus erit, veniam;

according as the contingency is past or future. P. § 443.

Page 30.

1. **si quid ille se velit**, 'if Caesar wants him at all' or 'for anything.' For *si quid vult* in *oratio recta*.

3. **quas Caesar possideret**, 'of which Caesar was in occupation.'

4. **molimento**, 'trouble,' 'exertion.'

6. **in sua Gallia**, 'in his part of Gaul,' in that part of Gaul in which he (Ariovistus) had established his supremacy, recognised by the Senate in acknowledging his title of king.

aut Caesari...Romano, 'either Caesar or, in fact, the Roman people at all.'

9. **cum his mandatis**, 'with the following message.' The message is put in *oratio obliqua*, but it no doubt gives the substance and nearly the very words of what Caesar commissioned his legates to say.

10. **suo populique Romani**. The possessive pronoun is often thus in apposition to a genitive, 'the kindness of himself and of the Roman people.'

11. **in consulatu suo**, 'in his (Caesar's) own consulship,' B.C. 59. See p. 28, l. 23 n.

13. **ut...gravaretur**, 'as to make difficulties when invited to a conference.' A consecutive subjunctive explanatory of **hanc gratiam**, 'such a return,' used ironically.

neque...dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, 'and as not to think that he need discuss and settle judicially a matter of mutual interest.' *cognoscere* and *cognitio* are technical words for an investigation of a case by a magistrate. Caesar uses the former here as though

he had been offering an arbitration or judicial decision of the points in dispute between himself and Ariovistus.

16. **amplius**, 'any more.'

19. **voluntate eius**, 'with his consent and approval'; p. 25, l. 14 n. **illis**, that is, to the Sequani.

22. **perpetuam**, 'unbroken.'

23. **M. Messala...consulibus**, B.C. 61. This was done in consequence of the disaster to the Aedui and the rumour of the coming movement of the Helvetii; about which Cicero writes to Atticus in March B.C. 60 (*ad Att.* I. 19). It was this decree of the Senate that authorised Caesar to leave the transalpine province assigned to him and to do anything he thought necessary in the rest of Gaul.

25. **quod...posset**, 'so far as he could do so with advantage to the republic.' The relative and subjunctive here *limit* a statement. P. § 456. **commodo** is an ablative of accompanying circumstances, it is more frequent with personal pronouns *meo*, *tuo*, etc. and seems always used without preposition.

Page 31.

1. **Aeduorum iniurias**, obj. gen. 'injuries done to the Aedui.'

3. **ius esse belli**, 'it was the law of war.'

6. **ad alterius praescriptum**, 'according to the dictates of a third party.'

12. **qui...faceret**, 'in having made.'

13. **sibi**, to Ariovistus.

15. **iniuria**, 'without just cause,' 'wrongfully.'

17. **longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani abfuturum**, 'that the titular brotherhood of the Roman people would not stand them in good stead.' **eis** is dative and **longe abesse** is 'to be far from,' 'not be at hand to help.' **fraternum...Romani** means the name of 'brothers' given by the Roman people; p. 29, l. 5 n.

18. **quod...denuntiaret**, 'as to Caesar's warning him.'

19. **neminem...contendisse**, 'no one had ever fought with him without fatal results to himself.'

20. **congrederetur**, 'let Caesar meet him,' the imperfect subjunctive in *oratio obliqua* for the imperative; p. 37, l. 14.

22. **inter annos XIIII**, 'for the last fourteen years,' *inter* in this phrase is nearly equivalent to *intra*, 'within'; but it means a little more than *intra*, 'within and in the course of.' The Germans had no doubt been long wandering, and many of them had only lately arrived in

Gaul, but it cannot be supposed that the bulk of those who had been for some years settled in Gaul had not lived in houses.

21. **quid...virtute possent,** 'what they were capable of in the matter of valour,' or, 'by their valour.'

24, 25. **eodem tempore...et...veniebant,** 'at the same time as this message was being brought back to Caesar, legates from the Aedui and Treveri were arriving.'

Page 32.

1. **quaestum,** p. 25, l. 2 n.; P. § 386. **quod...popularentur,** 'because (as they alleged) the Harudes were devastating their territories.' The subjunctive with *quod* shews that it is not the reason given by Caesar, but by the Aedui. It is therefore oblique.

3. **pacem Ariovisti,** 'peace with Ariovistus,' 'peace accorded by Ariovistus.' A subjective genitive.

4. **Treveri autem,** understand *questum*, 'came to complain.' **pagos,** 'cantons,' the place put for the people, 'the inhabitants of a hundred cantons,' or 'settlements.'

5. **qui...conarentur,** 'who were endeavouring,' the subjunctive in a subordinate clause of *oratio obliqua*.

8. **ne...minus facile resisti posset,** 'lest resistance should become more difficult.' **resisti** is impersonal and therefore **posset** can be used impersonally also. Lit. 'lest it should be less easily possible that resistance should be made.'

11. **magnis itineribus,** 'by forced marches.'

13. **tridui,** attributive genitive, 'a march of three days.' P. § 249.

20. **idque,** i.e. *oppidum*, 'and it was so strongly fortified by the nature of its position.' The imperfect **muniebatur** indicates the continuous nature of the defence, 'it was always protected by the natural features of the ground.' The river Doubs in a sort of horseshoe curve nearly surrounds the older part of Besançon (the *ville haute*), which is on the site of the ancient *oppidum*. Where the river fails the space is filled up by a considerable eminence.

22. **ut circino,** 'as though by a pair of compasses,' i.e. 'with a circular sweep.'

25. **continet,** 'fills up.' **magna altitudine,** 'of great height.' **ita, ut,** 'in such a position that.'

26. **ex utraque parte,** 'on both sides.' **ripae...contingant,** 'come close to.' *contingere* usually takes the accusative. It is here equivalent to *continguae sint*.

27. **arcem efficit,** 'makes it into a citadel.'

Page 33.

1. **huc**, 'to this town.'

4. **ad Vesontionem.** In military language the preposition is often used with names of towns: for an army would probably be encamped outside, though *near*, the town. Thus *ad Romam* means 'near Rome,' 'at the walls of Rome.'

6. **vocibus**, 'remarks,' 'utterances.'

7. **ingenti...exercitatione**, ablatives of quality, 'they spoke of them as being of immense height, of extraordinary valour and practice in arms.'

9. **ne...oculorum**, 'not even the expression of their countenances and the brightness of their eyes.'

14. **qui...amicitiae.** It was a frequent custom for the friends of a provincial governor to follow him to his province in hopes of getting various official employments. The most common was a *praefectura* or a *tribunatus*. The presence of these city men was often an embarrassment to the governor. Thus Cicero sent a lawyer Trebatius Testa with a letter of introduction to Caesar, who in writing back offered to give him a *tribunatus*, without military duty, but hinted that a lawyer was out of place in a camp.

16. **alius alia causa illata**, 'one on one excuse and one on another.'

20. **vultum fingere**, 'to control their countenance,' to assume a look of greater cheerfulness than they felt. *fingere vultum* is 'to make up one's countenance,' 'to force one's face to assume a certain expression.'

23. **volgo**, 'generally,' 'commonly.' **totis castris**, 'throughout the camp.'

24. **testamenta obsignabantur**, 'wills were being sealed up.' Soldiers on a campaign had later on the privilege of making wills without the presence of the seven witnesses required in ordinary cases. Iulius Caesar is said to have made some temporary arrangement for soldiers in this respect; but it was not thoroughly established until afterwards. The old ceremony of making a will while falling into order (*in procinctu*) had become obsolete. Wills were not sealed like modern documents, as a kind of signature making them effective. They were written on tablets, which were tied together and proved to be genuine by the seals of the witnesses.

26. **quique...praeerant**, 'and the commanders of the cavalry, the *praefecti*.'

Page 34.

2. **angustias**, 'difficulties.'

4. **ut satis commode...posset**, 'that there might be a difficulty in carting it up,' 'that it might not be able to be brought up with sufficient conveniency.' P. § 417, note 4.

6. **signa ferri**, 'to march,' lit. 'the standards to be carried.' The standards were fixed in the ground when the army halted or was in camp, and were pulled up and carried by the standard-bearers, when the word was given to march.

non fore dicto audientes, 'that they would not obey.' **audio** in the sense of 'obey' takes a dative. P. § 216.

10. **omniumque...centurionibus**, 'and having summoned the centurions of all ranks to that council.' Generally only the centurions of the first *ordo* in each cohort were summoned to a council of war. But on this occasion Caesar wished the whole legion to be immediately informed of his views.

12. **quo consilio**, 'with what design.'

14. **se consule**, 'in his (Caesar's) consulship,' that is, in the previous year B.C. 59; p. 30, l. 11 n.

15. **ab officio**, 'from his loyalty.' **cur...iudicaret**, 'why should anyone suppose that he was going so quickly to renounce his obligations?'

18. **neque suam neque populi**, for the possessive pronoun and genitive, see on p. 30, l. 10; p. 36, l. 15.

20. **quid tandem**, an emphatic question, 'what in the world?'

21. **ipsius**, i.e. Caesar's. See on p. 38, l. 18.

22. **factum eius hostis periculum**, 'the quality of this enemy had been tested,' 'trial of this enemy had been made.' **patrum...memoria**, 'within the memory of the last generation.' He refers to the victories over the Teutoni and Cimbri at Aquae Sextiae (B.C. 102) and on the Raudian plains near Vercellae (B.C. 101); p. 29, l. 16 n. For **nostrorum** and **nobis** (sc. 'Roman') in *oratio obliqua*, cp. p. 40, l. 7 n.

23. **cum...videbatur**, 'at the time when, after the repulse of the Cimbri and Teutoni by Gaius Marius, the army was thought to have deserved no less glory than its commander.' The use of the indicative with *cum* temporal is regular, but it is unusual to have it in a subordinate clause of *oratio obliqua*. But all writers occasionally use it thus, when they wish for the moment to present the actual words used more vividly.

26. **servili tumultu**, 'at the time of the outbreak of the slaves.' The rebellion of gladiators and slaves led by Spartacus B.C. 73—1. A war within Italy was technically called a *tumultus* not a *bellum*, for there was no foreign enemy (*hostis*). It is the ablative of time.

quos, sc. *servos*, understood from **servili tumultu,** 'the rising of slaves, whom, after all (*tamen*), the practice and discipline which they had gained from us did aid to a certain degree.'

Page 35.

2. **quos**, i.e. the slaves and gladiators under Spartacus.

inermos (or *inermes*), 'before they had got arms.'

3. **victores**. Spartacus defeated several Roman armies.

4. **hos**, i.e. *Germanos*.

6. **plerumque superarint**, 'have in the majority of cases overcome.' **qui,** i.e. the Helvetii who had just been beaten by Caesar.

7. **non potuerint**, 'have been unable.'

9. **hos**, 'such persons.'

'Such persons, if they looked into the matter, could discover that, after the Gauls had been wearied out by the length of the campaign, Ariovistus, having for many months kept himself within his camp and behind marshes without offering battle, attacked them suddenly when they had given up all hope of battle and had dispersed, and conquered them more by skilful strategy than by valour.'

11. **neque sui potestatem fecisset**, 'and had not given them a chance of attacking him.'

14. **cui rationi**, 'a plan of campaign for which.'

hac, sc. *ratione*, which is attracted into the relative clause and the case of the relative.

15. **ne ipsum quidem**, 'not even Ariovistus himself.'

16. **qui**...**conferrent**, 'those who disguised their own cowardice under the pretence of anxiety about the supply of corn and the difficulties of the march': i.e. who attributed what was really cowardice to a pretended anxiety about the corn and the difficulties of the road.

18. **facere arroganter**, 'were acting presumptuously.' **cum**, 'since.' **de officio imperatoris**, 'of their commander doing his duty.'

20. **curae**, dative, P. § 225, 'these details were his business.'

21. **iamque**, 'and by this time.'

25. **aut male**...**convictam**, 'either that fortune had deserted him in

some defeat, or that by the discovery of some dishonest action avaricious conduct had been brought home to him.'

27. **innocentiam**, 'disinterestedness,' 'incorruptibility.'

29. **quod...fuisset**, 'what he had intended to postpone to a more distant day.'

30. **repraesentaturum**, 'would carry out on the spot.'

31. **de quarta vigilia**, 'at the commencement of the fourth watch,' two hours before sunrise.

Page 36.

1. **pudor atque officium**, 'honour and loyalty,' *pudor* is the feeling of shame preventing a man from violating his duty.

2. **valeret**, 'would prevail,' 'was the stronger.'

3. **decima legione.** The tenth legion was always a favourite with Caesar, and did excellent work. It seems to have been the legion which Caesar found stationed in the province when he arrived.

4. **praetoriam cohortem**, 'his praetorian cohort,' or 'body-guard.' The 'praetorian cohort' was usually formed from the auxiliary troops.

9. **innata est**, 'was implanted in them.' **princeps**, 'at the head of the rest.'

13. **primorum ordinum**, that is, the centurions of the first ordo of the first maniple in each cohort. There would therefore be ten of them in each legion. Others however hold it to mean the six centurions of the first cohort.

15. **neque...existimavisse**, 'and they had regarded the decision as to the chief direction of the campaign not as belonging to themselves but to the commander.' *suum* is opposed to *imperatoris*, the possessive pronoun answering to a genitive; p. 34, l. 18.

18. **ex aliis**, a slightly illogical expression for *ex omnibus*, 'of all the chiefs.'

19. **milium...circuitu**, 'by making a détour of more than fifty miles.' **ut...duceret** explains *exquisito itinere*, 'have inquired the route, namely, how to lead, etc.'

20. **locis apertis**, 'through open country'; abl. of place without a preposition, as is common with *locus* and similar words, especially when they have a descriptive epithet.

21. **cum...non intermitteret**, 'in the course of an uninterrupted march.'

23. **milibus passuum quattuor et viginti**, 'twenty-four miles away,' ablative of measure, 'that they were distant by 24 miles.'

Page 37.

2. **quod...licere**, the speech is introduced by a verb of saying implied in *legatos mittit.* The tenses are historic, for *mittit* is an historic present.

3. **per se**, 'so far as he was concerned.' **quoniam...accessisset**, 'since Caesar had come nearer.'

6. **cum**, 'since,' 'seeing that.'

7. **ultro**, 'without being asked,' 'spontaneously.'

8. **pro**, 'considering.'

14. **uterque...veniret**, 'let each of them come with a body of cavalry'; p. 31, l. 20 n.

19. **Gallis equitibus**, 'from the Gallic horsemen.' Caesar had no Roman cavalry, he raised mounted troops from various parts of his province. He now mounted soldiers of the 10th legion on the horses of the Gauls.

22. **non irridicule**, 'with considerable wit.'

25. **cohortis praetoriae**, see p. 36, l. 4 n.

26. **ad equum rescribere**, 'he was entering them on the list of knights.' The old distinction of the 18 centuries of *equites* or knights, with an *equus publicus*, was still nominally in existence, though all who possessed a certain income ranked now as *equites*, but only the old number had the *equus publicus*, and the having that even among the old number of *equites* seems to have nearly fallen into desuetude until it was revived by Augustus. The rather poor joke seems to be that instead of making the 10th legion a *cohors praetoria* (which was an honour, but only a temporary one), he was as it were giving them 'public horses' and so permanently raising them all to the equestrian *ordo* or rank.

Page 38.

1. **planities**, it is not possible to be sure of the position of this plain and hill. Various spots have been fixed upon. It was somewhere in Elsass.

5. **quam equis vexerat**, 'which he had mounted.'

7. **ex equis**, 'on horseback,' 'mounted.'

14. **pro magnis hominum officiis**, 'in return for great individual services.'

16. **sua ac senatus**, 'of himself and the Senate.' See p. 36, l. 15 n.

18. **ipsis**, 'to the Romans.' In *oratio obliqua* Caesar often uses

the oblique cases of *ipse* instead of the reflexive pronoun, when some distinction is needed; p. 34, l. 21.

19. **quotiens quamque honorifica,** 'how often and in what complimentary terms.'

20. **ut,** 'how that,' depending on *docebat.* **omni tempore,** as we should say, 'from time immemorial.'

23. **ut...velit,** a clause explaining *consuetudinem* and in apposition to it. P. § 415.

24. **sui nihil,** 'nothing that was originally their own,' 'no advantage possessed by them independently.' The *sui* refers to the allies.

25. **auctiores,** 'improved,' 'on a better footing.'

quod vero...attulissent, 'that which they had brought with them when they became friends of the Roman people.'

27. **in mandatis,** 'among their instructions.'

Page 39.

2. **obsides redderet,** sc. *postulavit,* 'he demanded that he should restore.'

3. **at,** 'yet at least that he should not allow any more to cross the Rhine.'

6. **virtutibus,** 'great deeds,' 'distinguished services.'

10. **ab ipsis,** sc. *Gallis.* **ipsorum voluntate,** 'with the free consent of the Gauls themselves.' See p. 25, l. 14 n.

12. **consuerint,** 'have always been accustomed.'

16. **si...velint,** 'if the Gauls wish.' The present and perfect subjunctive are used through the first half of this speech, in preference to the historic tenses, for the sake of more vividly presenting the words of the speaker. From p. 40, l. 5 to l. 16 Caesar uses the historic tenses.

20. **ornamento...detrimento,** datives of the purpose or result. P. § 225.

22. **dediticii,** 'those who have unconditionally surrendered.'

24. **quod...traducat,** 'as to the fact that he is bringing across the river into Gaul.'

Page 40.

2. **defenderit,** 'has acted on the defensive.' *defendere bellum,* 'to ward off war,' is to resist when attacked.

prius in Galliam, that is, into Celtic Gaul, Gaul excluding the Province.

5. **quid sibi vellet cur...veniret**, 'what was his object in coming.' From this point down to **usos esse** we have the verbs in the historic tenses. Perhaps Caesar is now giving only the gist of what Ariovistus said more distinctly than in the previous and last parts of the speech.

7. **hanc Galliam**, 'this part of Gaul,' i.e. Celtic Gaul beyond the Province. **nostram**, sc. *Romanam*. Caesar writing for Romans can use this possessive pronoun as an adjective, equivalent to Roman, though pronouns of the first and second persons cannot in their simple meaning be used in *oratio obliqua*; p. 34, l. 22. **ut...non oporteret**, 'just as no concession was due to him.'

9. **qui...se interpellaremus**, 'for interfering with him.' **in suo iure**, 'in his protectorate,' 'in country rightly belonging to him.'

10. **quod...diceret**, 'as to Caesar's mentioning.'

11. **imperitum...rerum**, 'unacquainted with history,' 'uninformed as to what had taken place.' The objective genitive, P. § 262.

12. **bello Allobrogum proximo**, 'in the last war with the Allobroges.' There had been a rising of the Allobroges (the most northern tribe of the Province) in B.C. 66—65 which had been put down by Calpurnius Piso. Another in B.C. 62 was put down by C. Pomptinus.

14. **ipsos**, 'the Aedui themselves.' **secum**, 'with Ariovistus.'

16. **debere se...habere**, 'that he was bound to suspect that Caesar, under a pretence of friendship, in keeping an army in Gaul was acting with the view of crushing him (Ariovistus).'

21. **nobilibus principibusque ... gratum...facturum**, 'would be acting agreeably to the nobles and leading men in Rome.' The aristocratic party at Rome was bitterly opposed to Caesar. The praetor of B.C. 58 Domitius Ahenobarbus had wished to prosecute him for illegal conduct during his consulship, and threatened that when he himself became consul he would cause his recall and prosecution for malversation in Gaul. Caesar was already regarded as the head of the popular party; he was connected with Marius, who married his aunt, and had defied Sulla in old times, and in his praetorship (B.C. 62) and consulship (B.C. 59) had defied the Senate.

23. **compertum habere**, 'knew for certain.'

24. **eius morte**, 'by killing Caesar.' **quod si**, 'if however.'

25. **Galliae**, that is, of Gaul outside the Province.

27. **et quaecumque...confecturum**, 'and that whatever wars Caesar

wished waged Ariovistus would accomplish without any trouble or danger to him.'

Page 41.

2. **quare** depends on *in eam sententiam*, 'to explain why.'

6. **ab Quinto Fabio Maximo.** This was the war of B.C. 122—121 in consequence of which the Allobroges were joined to the Province. Q. Fabius Maximus defeated the Allobroges assisted by the Arverni and Ruteni, near Avignon, with immense slaughter B.C. 121.

9. **antiquissimum quodque tempus**, 'priority in point of time.'

12. **quam...voluisset**, 'which though conquered in war the Senate had decided should enjoy its own laws.' That is, it was not formally annexed to the Province, but had free internal administration so long as the laws did not conflict with conditions laid down by the conquerors.

16. **ad nostros adequitare**, 'were putting their horses at our men,' 'were riding up to attack our men.'

17. **facit...recepit**, the using of the historic present in connexion with the perfect gives point to the rapid narrative.

20. **legionis delectae**, 'to the picked legion,' i.e. the tenth.

22. **per fidem**, 'by his (breach of) faith.' To say that a man is deceived by another's pledge (*fides*) is tantamount to saying that it is done, by the breach of that pledge. In such a phrase also no doubt there was a feeling of the sense of wrong conveyed by *per* (= παρά), as in *perfidus*, *periurus*, *perdo*.

23. **posteaquam...elatum est**, 'when it became known to the common soldiers.'

24. **omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset**, 'had warned off the Romans from all Gaul.' *Romanis* is dative. *interdicere* has two constructions: *interdicere aliquid alicui*, 'to forbid something to some one,' and *interdicere alicui aliqua re*, 'to debar some one from something,' as in this passage.

Page 42.

1. **eaque res...ut diremisset**, 'and how that fact had broken off the conference.'

4. **biduo**, abl. of time how long after. P. § 280.

7, 8. **constitueret...mitteret**, 'let him settle,' 'let him send.' For the imperative in *oratio recta*. See p. 31, l. 20 n.

8. **e suis legatis**, 'one of his own legates,' i.e. one of his *legati* or 'staff officers.'

10. **pridie eius diei**, 'on the very day before.' This construction of **pridie** as an ablative substantive joined with genitive may be compared with our use of *eve* ('on the eve of that day') to mean the day before a particular day. Cp. *postridie*, p. 20, l. 9.

11. **quin...conicerent**, 'from throwing volleys of missiles at our men.' P. § 419.

14. **Procillum**, see p. 17, l. 16 n.

18. **qua...utebatur**, 'which language Ariovistus from prolonged association now used a great deal.' **multa** is abl. agreeing with *qua* (sc. *lingua*) but in meaning is adverbial.

19. **peccandi**, i.e. of acting treacherously.

21. **hospitio...utebatur**, 'was on terms of friendship with Ariovistus.'

24. **conclamavit**, 'he asked in a loud tone of voice.'

Page 43.

3. **postridie eius diei**, see on p. 42, l. 9, 'on the morrow of that day.'

4. **ultra eum**, 'beyond him,' seems to mean to the South-west of Caesar's camp so as to occupy the pass between the Vosges and the Jura.

5. **frumento commeatuque**, 'from corn and other supplies,' ablative of separation, P. § 229.

10. **potestas**, 'opportunity,' 'facility.'

12. **hoc**, 'the following.'

15. **singuli singulos**, 'each cavalryman selecting one infantry soldier to protect him.'

16. **in proeliis versabantur**, 'they took part in the actual engagements.'

17. **si quid erat durius**, 'if any unusual difficulty occurred.' **concurrebant**, 'ran to the rescue.'

19. **si quo**, 'if in any direction.'

20. **exercitatione**, 'from exercise,' 'owing to training.'

21. **iubis equorum sublevati**, 'hanging on to the manes of the horses,' 'supported by the manes.' **cursum**, 'the pace of the horses.'

26. **locum delegit**, 'selected a suitable place for a camp.' This was always done by an advanced guard, despatched on purpose. The main army was then led to the ground and fortified it. But on this

occasion Caesar only employed a third of his army in fortifying the camp, the rest marched in order of battle and ready for fighting.

Page 44.

5. **expedita**, 'in fighting trim,' without carrying any heavy burdens.

6. **quae copiae...perterrerent...prohiberent**, 'a force meant to terrify our men and to prevent them from fortifying the camp.'

12. **instituto suo**, 'in accordance with his plan.'

14. **hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit**, 'offered the enemy battle.'

18. **quae...oppugnaret**, 'to assault.' P. § 453, § 423 note 3.

23. **proelio non decertaret**, 'did not accept a general engagement.' The force of *de* in *decertare* is intensive as in *depugnare*, 'to fight it out,' 'to fight a pitched battle.'

25. **sortibus et vaticinationibus**, 'by drawing of lots and other prophetic methods.' Tacitus (*Germ.* 8) says the same of the belief of the Germans in the prophetic power of women, only that he does not confine it to matrons (*matresfamiliae*). Greek armies always had a *mantis* with them who examined the victims sacrificed before a battle and sometimes warned the General not to fight. The Romans did the same, but were apt to disregard the omens, and many disasters were quoted by believers as the consequence. Tacitus (*Germ.* 10) describes the method of *sortes* by twigs marked with special signs and scattered on a white cloth.

26. **utrum...ex usu esset**, 'whether it was to their advantage.'

Page 45.

1. **si...contendissent**, 'if they fought.' The pluperfect subj. in *oratio obliqua* for the future indicative in *oratio recta*, 'si contendent.'

5. **alarios**, 'the auxiliaries,' so-called because their regular place in a battle was on the wings.

6. **quod minus...valebat**, 'because he was somewhat weak in the number of legionary soldiers in comparison with the numbers of the enemy.'

7. **ad speciem**, 'to make a show,' to give the impression of a larger force.

9. **tum demum**, 'then, and not till then,' 'then at last.'

10. **generatim**, 'in tribes,' 'according to their tribes.'

14. **eo**, 'thither,' that is, 'into this laager of wagons.'

18. **singulos legatos et quaestorem**, 'he put at the head of each legion a legatus or the quaestor.' There was only one *quaestor*. Caesar caused him to command one legion, and a *legatus* was put at the head of each of the others. But the *et quaestorem* is rather awkwardly expressed. Caesar continued hereafter to use his *legati* for this purpose, and under the Empire the regular commander of the legion was a *legatus*.

20. **a dextro cornu**, 'on the right wing.' It was all important to pierce the enemy's formation. Caesar therefore struck hardest at the weakest point.

22. **ita...daretur**, 'our men on the signal being given charged the enemy with such spirit, and the enemy rushed out to meet them with such promptness and velocity, that no opportunity was given for pouring in the volley of pila.' The regular proceeding on the part of the Roman legions was to throw their pila before coming to close quarters and fighting with the sword. But the Germans came on so fast that they only had time to draw their swords, and had to drop their pila without using them.

27. **phalange facta**, 'having taken close order,' 'having formed square.' This is a different thing from the Macedonian fighting phalanx or compact body of men advancing sixteen deep. It is of the nature of the modern square formed to resist cavalry, or what the Romans called technically an *orbis*.

Page 46.

1. **reperti sunt...qui...insilirent**, 'large numbers of our men were found bold enough to leap on to the square.' The Germans stood in close order, the front rank protecting their bodies with their shields, while the inner ranks held their shields above their heads, forming a kind of roof or testudo, upon which some of the Roman soldiers sprang, and pulling away the roof of shields thrust their swords down upon the men below.

5. **a dextro cornu...premebant**, 'on the right wing, owing to their large numbers, they were pressing our line very severely.'

7. **Publius Crassus adulescens**, 'the young P. Crassus.' Caesar gives this epithet to him, as he does to Decimus Brutus, as being under the Quaestorian age (i.e. 30). He nowhere calls him a *legatus*. It is clear that his office was a *praefectura*, and he here commands the cavalry as *praefectus*. The *praefecti* also commanded the *auxilia*. He returned

to Rome in B.C. 55 (his father's 2nd consulship) and accompanied his father next year to Syria and fell with him in B.C 53 at Carrhae.

8. **quod expeditior erat**, because it (the 3rd line) was less encumbered and easier to move than the men who were already engaged in the battle.

9. **subsidio**, 'to relieve,' 'to support,' dative of purpose. P. § 226.

11. **restitutum est**, 'was renewed,' 'was replaced on a good footing.'

13. **milia...circiter quinque**, 'a distance of some five miles from that spot': accusative of extent or distance between, P. § 282. There seems a considerable doubt about the number five, which some alter to *quinquaginta*, 'fifty.' If it is genuine the general idea as to the site of the battle must be wrong or the river meant must be not the Rhine, but its tributary the Ill.

17. **ea**, 'on it,' 'by means of it.'

18. **equitatu**, 'by means of the cavalry,' an instrumental ablative.

19. **duae**. The Germans were as a rule strictly confined to one wife, but Tacitus admits that certain chiefs for state purposes married more than one.

21. **duxerat**, 'had married.'

24. **Procillus**, see p. 17, l. 16 n.

25. **in ipsum Caesarem...incidit**, 'fell in with Caesar personally,' and was of course set at liberty.

Page 47.

1. **neque...deminuerat**, 'and because fortune had not made any drawback to such joy and congratulation by a disaster to that man.'

3. **is se praesente...reservaretur**, 'he reported that three times before his face lots had been drawn to decide whether he should be burned to death at once or reserved for another time.' The number three had some sacred significance, and Tacitus (*Germ.* 10) tells us that in consulting the lots, the twigs (*surculi*) were taken up three times each.

5. **sortium beneficio**, 'it was thanks to the lots.'

10. **Rhenum**, governed by the preposition *prope* implied in *proximi*. Cp. 3. 7 *Crassus proximus mare Oceanum hiemarat.*

13. **maturius...postulabat**, 'a little earlier than the time of year demanded.' At the beginning of the campaign against the Germans Caesar speaks of the corn being ripe in the fields. The end of it will be therefore perhaps in September.

14. **in hiberna in Sequanos**, 'into winter quarters in the territory of the Sequani.' The Latin idiom is to put both the place and the person in the accusative, as *in castra ad Caesarem venit*, 'he came to see Caesar in the camp.'

15. **in citeriorem Galliam**, 'into Cisalpine Gaul,' that is into North Italy. Caesar usually spent the winter at Ravenna or Lucca, from which he could watch political affairs at Rome, and where he was visited by his friends and partisans.

16. **ad conventus agendos**, 'to hold the assizes,' yearly meetings held in the chief towns by a Provincial governor, to decide all judicial cases referred to him on appeal or coming directly before him to be judged.

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	ablative.	*neg.*	negative.
acc.	accusative.	*nom.*	nominative.
adj.	adjective.	*num.*	numeral.
adv.	adverb.	*part.*	participle
comp.	comparative.	*partic.*	participial.
conj.	conjunction.	*perf.*	perfect.
dat.	dative.	*pl.*	plural.
defect.	defective.	*poss.*	possessive.
dep.	deponent.	*prep.*	preposition.
distrib.	distributive.	*pron.*	pronoun.
f.	feminine.	*pronom.*	pronominal.
fut.	future.	*reflex.*	reflexive.
gen.	genitive.	*rel.*	relative.
impers.	impersonal.	*semi-dep.*	semi-deponent.
indecl.	indeclinable.	*sing.*	singular.
indef.	indefinite.	*subst.*	substantive.
inf.	infinitive.	*sup.*	supine.
interrog.	interrogative.	*superl.*	superlative.
irreg.	irregular.	*v. a.*	verb active.
loc.	locative.	*v. n.*	verb neuter.
m.	masculine.	1, 2, 3, 4	1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th conjugations.
n.	neuter.		

(*References are to page and line of text.*)

A., for **Aulŭs**, see **Găbīnĭŭs.**

a.d., *ante diem*, see **dĭēs.**

ā, **ăb**, prep. [abl.] *from*, *by;* **ăb Sēquănīs**, *near the Sequani* 2 6; **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing;* **ā sĭnistrō cornū**, *on the left wing;* **ā nŏvissĭmō agmĭnĕ**, *on the rear.*

abdo, -ĕrĕ, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, 3 v. a. *to hide.*

abdūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to lead away*, *to lead prisoner.*

absens, -ntĭs, adj. *absent.*

abstĭnĕo, -ēre, -ŭī, -tentum, 2 v. a. and n. *to hold off*, *to hold off from*, *to abstain from.*

absum, -essĕ, -fŭī, -fŭtūrŭs, irreg. v. n. *to be absent*, *wanting*, *distant.*

āc, conj. *and*, *ana also*, connecting two clauses as closely dependent on each other. See also **atquĕ.**

accēdo, -ĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessum, 3 v. n. *to approach*, *to be added to.*

accĭdo, -ĕrĕ, -cĭdī, 3 v. n. *to happen*, *to befall.*

accĭpĭo, -ĕrĕ, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 v. a. *to accept*, *to receive;* **acceptŭs**, *acceptable.*

accurro, -ĕrĕ, -cŭcurrī, -cursum, 3 v. n. *to run up to, to hasten to.*

accūso, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to accuse.*

ăcĭēs, -ēī, f. *edge, line of battle;* **ăcĭem instrŭĕrĕ**, *to draw out in line of battle;* **ăcĭēs ŏcŭlōrum**, *the gleam of the eyes.*

ācrĭtĕr, adv. *sharply, fiercely.*

ăd, prep. [acc.] *to, towards;* with numerals *to the number of;* **ăd nūtum atquĕ vŏluntātem**, *according to one's direction and wish;* **ăd spĕcĭem**, *as a show, for appearance' sake.*

ădaequo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to make equal, to keep up with.*

ădămo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to be in love with, to set one's affections on.*

addūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to lead up to, to induce.*

ădĕquĭto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to ride up.*

adfĕro, -ferrĕ, -tŭlī, allātum, irreg. v. a. *to bring to.*

ădhĭbĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. a. *to summon, to invite.*

ădĭtŭs, -ūs, m. *approach, right of approach.*

Admagetobrigă, -ae, f. *Admagetobriga*, a town in N.E. Gaul.

admīrŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to wonder at, to admire.*

admitto, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. *to let go, to admit;* **admissō ĕquō**, *at full gallop.*

ădŏrĭŏr, -īrī, -ortŭs sum, 4 dep. v. a. *to attack, to assail.*

adscisco, -ĕrĕ, -scīvī, -scītum, 3 v. a. *to attach, to attach to oneself.*

adsum, -essĕ, -fŭī, irreg. v. n. *to be at hand, to be present.*

ădŭlescens, -ntĭs, m. *a young man.*

ădŭlescentĭă, -ae, f. *youth, adolescence.*

adventŭs, -ūs, m. *arrival, advent.*

adversŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *adverse, unfavourable;* **adversum proelĭum**, *a reverse.*

adverto, -ĕrĕ, -vertī, -versum, 3 v. *to turn to, to turn towards;* **ănĭmum advertĕrĕ**, *to notice.*

aedĭfĭcĭum, -ī, n. *a building.*

Aedŭŭs, -ī, m. *an Aeduan.* The *Aedui* were a Gallic tribe living between the Loire and the Saône.

aegrē, adv. *with difficulty, scarcely;* **aegerrĭmē**, *with very great difficulty.*

Aemĭlĭŭs, -ī, m. *Lucius Aemilius*, a cavalry officer.

aequĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *equity, fairness.*

aequo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to make equal.*

aequŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *equal.*

aestās, -ātĭs, f. *summer.*

affĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 v. a. *to affect, to afflict with;* **dŏlōrĕ affĭcī**, *to be aggrieved;* **supplĭcĭō affĭcĕrĕ**, *to punish;* **bĕnĕfĭcĭō affĭcĕrĕ**, *to benefit.*

affīnĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *relationship by marriage.*

ăgĕr, -grī, m. *a field, country, territory.*

aggrĕdĭŏr, -ī, -gressŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. and n. *to go towards, to approach, to attack.*

agmĕn, -ĭnĭs, n. *an army on the march, a column* [ăgĕrĕ, *to move*]*;* **nŏvissĭmum agmĕn**, *the rear of an army;* **claudĕrĕ agmĕn**, *to bring up the rear.*

ăgo, -ĕrĕ, ēgī, actum, 3 v. a. *to drive, to do;* **ăgĕrĕ cum**, *to negotiate with, to plead with.*

ălăcrĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *spirit, alacrity.*

ālārĭī, -ōrum, m. pl. *men on the wings, foreign auxiliaries.*

ălĭēnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *belonging to some one else, another's;* **ălĭēnŭs lŏcŭs**, *an unfavourable position.*

ălĭquamdĭū, adv. *for some time.*

ălĭquĭs [-**quī**], -quă, -quĭd (-quŏd), pron. *some one* (opposed to *no one*), *some, any;* **ălĭquĭd**, *somewhat* 34 26.

ălĭŭs, -ă, -ŭd, adj. *another, other;* **ălĭŭs**...**ălĭŭs**, *the one...the other;* **ălĭŭs ălĭā causā illātā**, *some on one pretext and some on another.*

Allŏbrŏgēs, -um, m. pl. *the Allobroges*, a Gallic tribe living between the Rhone and the Isère, joined to the Roman province in B.C. 121.

ălo, -ĕrĕ, ălŭī, ălĭtum and altum, 3 v. a. *to nourish, to support.*

Alpēs, -ĭum, f. pl. *the Alps.*

altĕr, -ĕră, -ĕrum, adj. *the other* of two; **altĕr**...**altĕr**, *the one... the other.*

altĭtūdō, -ĭnĭs, f. *height, depth.*

altŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *deep, high;* **altissĭmŭs**, *deepest, very deep, very lofty.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Ambarri*, a Gallic tribe on the Saône.

āmentĭă, -ae, f. *recklessness, infatuation.*

ămīcĭtĭă, -ae, f. *friendship.*

ămīcŭs, -ī, m. *a friend.*

ămīcŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *friendly;* **ămīcissĭmŭs**, *most friendly, most devoted.*

āmitto, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. *to lose.*

ămŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *love.*

amplĭŭs, adv. *more;* **amplissĭmē**, *most liberally.*

amplŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *large, splendid;* **amplĭŏr**, *larger.*

ăn, conj. *or;* **utrum**...**ăn**, *whether... or*, of two alternatives; interr. particle, *is it?*

anceps, -cĭpĭtĭs, adj. *double, facing two ways, doubtful;* **anceps proelĭum**, *a double battle.*

angustĭae, -ārum, f. pl. *narrowness, difficult country, narrow passage.*

angustŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *narrow;* **in angustō essĕ**, *to be in a difficulty.*

ănĭmadverto, -ĕrĕ, -vertī, -versum, 3 v. a. *to notice;* **animadvertĕrĕ in**, *to punish.*

ănĭmŭs, -ī, m. *mind, feeling, spirit, courage;* **in ănĭmō essĕ**, *to be in one's mind, to be intended.*

annŭs, -ī, m. *a year.*

annŭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *annual, for a year.*

antĕ, adv. *formerly, earlier;* **antĕ quam**, *sooner than, before;* **paucīs antĕ dĭēbŭs**, *a few days before;* prep. [acc.] *before.*

antĕā, adv. *before.*

antīquŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *ancient;* **antīquissĭmŭs**, *most ancient.*

ăpĕrio, -īrĕ, -ŭī, -tum, 4 v. a. *to open;* **lătĕrĕ ăpertō**, *on the unprotected flank*, i.e. *on the right side;* **lŏcă ăpertă**, *open country.*

appello, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to call, to name, to address.*

appĕto, -ĕrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 3 v. a. *to seek for, to try to get.*

Ăprīlĭs, -ĕ, adj. *April, of April;* **Kal. Apr.** [Kălendae Aprīlēs], *the first of April.*

ăpŭd, prep. [acc.] *at, with, among, in the presence of, at the house of.*

Ăquĭleiă, -ae, f. *Aquileia*, a town in Venetia, N. E. of Cisalpine Gaul, a Roman colony founded in B.C. 182.

Ăquĭtānĭă, -ae, f. *Aquitaine*, the S. W. district of Gaul.

Ăquĭtānŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *of Aquitania;* **Ăquĭtānī**, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Aquitanians.*

Ărăr, -ărĭs, m. *the river Arar* (the Saône).

arbĭtrĭum, -ī, n. *will.*

arbĭtrŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. and n. *to think, to deem.*

arcesso, -ĕrĕ, -īvī, -ītum, 3 v. a. *to summon, to invite.*

Ariovistŭs, -ī, m. *Ariovistus*, a German chief, invited into Gaul.

armă, -ōrum, n. pl. *arms.*

armātŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *armed.*

arrŏgantĕr, adv. *presumptuously.*

arrŏgantĭă, -ae, f. *arrogance, presumption.*

Arvernī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Arverni*, a Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes (mod. *Auvergne*).

arx, arcĭs, f. *a citadel.*

ascendo, -ĕrĕ, -ndī, -nsum, 3 v. a. *to ascend, to climb.*

ascensŭs, -ūs, m. *an ascent, a climbing up.*

ăt, conj. *but, yet, at least.*

atquĕ, conj. *and, and even;* **pār atquĕ**, *the same as.*

attingo, -ĕrĕ, -tĭgī, -tactum, 3 v. a. *to touch upon, to reach.*

auctōrĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *authority, influence.*

auctŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *enhanced;* **auctĭŏr**, *somewhat enhanced, more amply endowed.*

audācĭă, -ae, f. *boldness.*

audactĕr, adv. *boldly;* **audācĭŭs**, *more boldly.*

audĕo, -ērĕ, ausŭs sum, 2 semi-dep. v. a. and n. *to be bold, to dare.*

audĭo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 4 v. a. *to hear.*

augĕo, -ērĕ, auxī, auctum, 2 v. a. *to increase, to make to grow.*

aut, conj. *or;* **aut...aut**, *either...or.*

autem, conj. *but, moreover.*

auxĭlĭum, -ī, n. *help, aid;* pl. **auxĭlĭă**, *auxiliaries.*

ăvārĭtĭă, -ae, f. *avarice.*

āverto, -ĕrĕ, -vertī, -versum, 3 v. a. *to turn aside, to turn away;* **āversŭs hostĭs**, *an enemy turned away, an enemy seen from the rear.*

ăvŭs, -ī, m. *a grandfather.*

barbărŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *barbarous, uncivilized.*

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl. *the Belgae*, a tribe in the northern parts of Gaul (Belgium).

bellĭcōsŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *warlike.*

bello, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to go to war, to fight.*

bellum, -ī, n. *war.*

bĕnĕfĭcĭum, -ī, n. *a kindness, a favour.*

Bibractĕ, -ĭs, n. *Bibracte*, capital of the Aedui, mod. *Autun* [Augustodūnum].

bĭdŭum, -ī, n. *a space of two days.*

bĭennĭum, -ī, n. *a space of two years.*

bĭpartītō, adv. *in two divisions.*

Bĭtūrĭgēs, -um, m. pl. *the Bituriges*, a tribe in central Gaul.

Boiī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Boii*, a tribe of Gauls, some ot whom lived in Transalpine and some in Cisalpine Gaul.

bŏnĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *goodness.*

bŏnum, -ī, n. *good, advantage.*
bŏnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *good;* **bŏnō ănĭmō essĕ**, *to be well disposed.*
brāchĭum, -ī, n. *an arm.*
brĕvĭs, -ĕ, adj. *short.*

C. for **Gāĭŭs**, see **Caburŭs** and **Prōcillŭs.**
C, see **centum.**
Caburŭs, -ī, m., see **Prōcillŭs.**
cădo, -ĕrĕ, cĕcĭdī, cāsum, 3 v. n. *to fall.*
Caesăr, -ărĭs, m. *Gaius Iulius Caesar*, b. B.C. 100, ob. B.C. 44. Consul first in B.C. 59. He was in Gaul from B.C. 58 to B.C. 49.
călămĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *misfortune, disaster.*
căpĭo, -ĕrĕ, cēpī, captum, 3 v. a. *to take, to capture, to occupy, to feel;* **nōmĕn căpĕrĕ ex**, *to derive a name from.*
captīvŭs, -ī, m. *a captive.*
căpŭt, -ĭtĭs, n. *a head;* **căpĭtă**, *persons.*
carrŭs, -ī, m. or **carrum**, -ī, n. *a cart, a wagon* [Latinised from a Celtic word, cp. 'car'].
Cassĭānŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *of Cassius;* **bellum Cassĭānum**, the war in Gaul waged by L. Cassius Longinus in B.C. 107.
Cassĭŭs, -ī, m. *Cassius*, a Roman name, *L. Cassius Longinus*, consul B.C. 107.
castellum, -ī, n. *a fortress, a fort.*
Casticŭs, -ī, m. *Casticus*, one of the Sequani.
castră, -ōrum, n. pl. *a camp* [the sing. **castrum**, -ī, n. used for *a fortress*]; **castră pōnĕrĕ**, *to pitch a camp;* **castră mŏvērĕ**, *to strike camp.*

cāsŭs, -ūs, m. *a falling out, a chance.*
Catamantaloedes, -ĭs, m. *Catamantaloedes*, a chief of the Sēquăni.
cătēnă, -ae, f. *a chain.*
Cătŭrĭgēs, -um, m. pl. *the Caturiges*, a Ligurian tribe in S. E. Gaul.
causă, -ae, f. *a cause, a reason;* **causam dīcĕrĕ**, *to plead one's cause, to be on trial;* **causā**, with gen. *for the sake of.*
căvĕo, -ērĕ, cāvī, cautum, 2 v. a. and n. *to be on one's guard, to be cautious about.*
CCCLXVIII, see **trĕcentī sexāgintā octō.**
CCLXIII, see **dŭcentī sexāgintā trēs.**
CCXL, see **dŭcentī quadrāgintā.**
cĕlĕrĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *swiftness.*
cĕlĕrĭtĕr, adv. *quickly;* **cĕlĕrĭŭs**, *more quickly;* **cĕlerrĭmē**, *most quickly.*
Celtae, -ārum, m. pl. *the Celts*, the inhabitants of central Gaul.
censĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, 2 v. a. and n. *to vote, to decree.*
censŭs, -ūs, m. *a numbering, a census.*
centum, indecl. num. adj. *a hundred.*
centŭrĭō, -ōnĭs, m. *a centurion*, one of 60 officers in a legion.
certŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *fixed, certain;* **certĭōrem făcĕrĕ**, *to inform;* **certĭŏr fĭĕrī**, *to be informed;* **certissĭmŭs**, *most certain.*
[**cētĕrŭs**], -ă, -um [nom. sing. m. not used; and the singular generally rare], adj. *the rest, the other.*

Ceutrŏnēs, -um, m. pl. *the Ceutrones*, a tribe in Savoy.

cĭbārĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *of food, belonging to food;* **cĭbārĭă**, n. pl. *provisions;* **cĭbārĭă mŏlĭtă**, *ground corn, flour.*

Cimbĕrĭŭs, -ī, m. *Cimberius*, a German chief.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Cimbri*, a tribe from N. Germany.

cingo, -ĕrĕ, cinxī, cinctum, 3 v. a. *to surround.*

circĭnŭs, -ī, m. *pair of compasses.*

circĭtĕr, adv. *about;* prep. [acc.] *round about, about.*

circŭĭtŭs, -ūs, m. *a going about, a circuit, a détour.*

circum, adv. and prep. [acc.] *round, about.*

circumdo, -ărĕ, -dĕdī, -dătum, 1 v. a. *to put round.*

circumdūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to lead round, to make to wind.*

circumsisto, -ĕrĕ, -stĭtī, 3 v. n. *to stand round.*

circumvĕnĭo, -īrĕ, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 v. a. *to surround, to take by treachery.*

cĭtĕrĭŏr, -ĭŭs, gen. -ĭōrĭs, adj. [comp. of **cĭtĕr**, -tră, -trum] *nearer, hither;* **prōvincĭă cĭtĕrĭŏr**, the province of Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps.

cĭtrā, adv. and prep. [acc.] *on this side, within.*

cĭtrō, adv. *hither, this way;* **ultrō citrōquĕ**, *backwards and forwards.*

cīvĭtās, -ātĭs, f. properly *citizenship;* but also *a state, a town, a people* **11** 4, **16** 14.

claudo, -ĕrĕ, clausī, clausum, 3 v. a. *to close;* **claudĕrĕ agmĕn**, *to bring up the rear.*

clĭens, -ntĭs, m. and f. *a dependent, a client.*

CLXXX, see **centum octōgintā**.

cŏĕmo, -ĕrĕ, -ēmī, -emptum, 3 v. a. *to buy up.*

coepī, -issĕ, coeptŭs sum, defect. semi-dep. v. a. *to begin* [only tenses from perfect stem used].

cŏercĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. a. *to constrain, to keep in check, to confine.*

cōgĭto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to consider, to think over.*

cognosco, -ĕrĕ, -nōvī, -nĭtum, 3 v. a. *to know, to ascertain;* **causā cognĭtā**, *after an investigation.*

cōgo, -ĕrĕ, cŏēgī, cŏactum, 3 v. a. *to bring together, to force, to compel.*

cŏhors, -rtĭs, f. *a cohort*, the 10th part of a legion.

cŏhortŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to exhort, to encourage.*

collĭgo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to tie together, to fasten together.*

collĭs, -ĭs, m. *a hill.*

collŏco, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to place together, to station, to give in marriage.*

collŏquĭum, -ī, n. *a conversation, a conference.*

collŏquŏr, -ī, -lŏcūtŭs sum, 3 dep. v. n. *to speak with, to hold conference.*

combūro, -ĕrĕ, -ussī, -ustum, 3 v. a. *to burn up, to consume.*

commĕātŭs, -ūs, m. *provisions, commissariat.*

commĕmŏro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to remind of, to mention.*

commĕo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum [cum,

mĕārĕ], 1 v. n. *to go backwards and forwards.*

commĭnŭs, adv. *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

committo, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. *to unite, to join, to trust;* **committĕrĕ proelĭum**, *to join battle; to commit, to do any (wrong) act;* **committĕrĕ ŭt**, *to allow* **12** 8.

commŏdē, adv. *advantageously, conveniently.*

commŏdum, -ī, n. *advantage.*

commŏdŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *convenient, advantageous;* **commŏdissĭmŭs**, *most convenient.*

commŏnĕfăcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, -factum, 3 v. a. *to remind, to admonish.*

commŏvĕo, -ĕrĕ, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 v. a. *to agitate, to move deeply.*

commūnĭo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 4 v. a. *to fortify, to entrench.*

commūnĭs, -ĕ, adj. *common, universal;* **commūnī consĭlĭō**, *as a body.*

commūtātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a change, variation;* **rērum commūtātĭō**, *a reverse, a revolution.*

commūto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to change, to exchange.*

compăro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to prepare, to get together; to compare.*

compĕrĭo, -īrĕ, -pĕrī, -pertum, 4 v. a. *to find out, to ascertain;* **compertum hăbērĕ**, *to be assured.*

complectŏr, -ī, -plexŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to embrace, to include.*

complĕo, -ērĕ, -ēvī, -ētum, 2 v. a. *to fill.*

complūrēs, -ă, gen. -ĭum, adj. *several, not a few.*

comporto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to carry to one place, to collect.*

cōnātum, -ī, n. *an attempt, a thing attempted.*

cōnātŭs, -ūs, m. *an effort, an attempt.*

concēdo, -ĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessum, 3 v. a. *to allow, to grant.*

concīdo, -ĕrĕ, -cīdī, -cīsum, 3 v. a. *to cut to pieces, to kill.*

concĭlĭo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to bring together, to win over, to conciliate.*

concĭlĭum, -ī, n. *a meeting, a council;* **concĭlĭum indīcĕrĕ**, *to summon an assembly.*

conclāmo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to exclaim, to shout.*

concurro, -ĕrĕ, -cŭcurrī, -cursum, 3 v. n. *to run together, to rush to the rescue.*

concursŭs, -ūs, m. *a rushing together, a rally, a charge.*

condĭcĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a condition, terms.*

condōno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to grant, to give up as a favour to, to pardon for the sake of.*

condūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to bring together* **4** 13; *to hire.*

confercĭo, -īrĕ, -fersī, -fertum, 4 v. a. *to crowd together;* **confertŭs**, -ă, -um, *packed together;* **confertissĭmŭs**, *very closely packed, in very close order.*

confĕro, -ferrĕ, -tŭlī, collātum, irreg. v. a. *to bring together, to collect, to compare;* **conferrĕ in**, *to attribute to* **35** 17; *to defer* **35** 30; **sē conferrĕ**, *to betake oneself.*

confĭcĭo, -ĕre, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 v. a. *to accomplish, to finish;* **tăbŭlae littĕrīs Graecīs confectae**, *tablets written in Greek letters.*

confīdo, -ĕrĕ, -fīsŭs sum, 3 semi-dep. v. n. *to trust in.*

confirmo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to strengthen, to establish, to assert.*

congrĕdĭŏr, -ī, -gressŭs sum, 3 v. n. *to meet.*

cōnĭcio, -ĕrĕ, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 v. a. *to throw, to hurl;* **sē cōnĭcĕrĕ**, *to throw oneself.*

coniungo, -ĕrĕ, -iunxī, -iunctum, 3 v. a. *to join, to unite.*

coniūrātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a conspiracy, a sworn league.*

cōnŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to attempt, to try.*

conquīro, -ĕrĕ, -quīsīvī, quīsītum, 3 v. a. *to enquire for, to seek.*

consanguĭnĕŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *related by blood, cousin, relation.*

conscisco, -ĕrĕ, -scīvī, -scītum, 3 v. a. *to resolve;* **mortem sĭbī consciscĕrĕ**, *to commit suicide.*

conscĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *conscious, aware of.*

conscrībo, -ĕrĕ, -scripsī, -scriptum, 3 v. a. *to enrol.*

consensŭs, -ūs, m. *agreement.*

consĕquŏr, -ī, -sĕcūtŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to follow, to overtake, to succeed in doing, to obtain.*

Consĭdĭŭs, -ī, m. *Publius Considius*, a Roman officer.

consīdo, -ĕrĕ, -sēdī, -sessum, 3 v. n. *to sit down, to settle.*

consĭlĭum, -ī, n. *counsel, plan, policy, deliberation.*

consisto, -ĕrĕ, -stĭtī, 3 v. n. *to take up a position, to stand, to stop, to halt.*

consōlŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to console.*

conspectŭs, -ūs, m. *sight;* **in conspectū**, *in view.*

conspĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -spexī, -spectum, 3 v. a. *to see, to behold.*

conspĭcŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to get sight of, to espy.*

constantĭă, -ae, f. *firmness, perseverance.*

constĭtŭo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -ūtum, 3 v. a. *to place, to settle, to establish, to agree upon;* **ăcĭem constĭtŭĕrĕ**, *to set the line of battle.*

consuesco, -ĕrĕ, -suēvī, -suētum, 3 v. n. *to be accustomed.*

consuētūdō, -ĭnĭs, f. *habit, custom.*

consŭl, -ŭlĭs, m. *a Consul*, one of the two chief magistrates at Rome elected yearly. Used in ablative with names or pronouns to show the year, as **M. Messālā ĕt M. Pīsōnĕ consŭlĭbŭs**, *in the consulship of Messala and Piso.*

consŭlātŭs, -ūs, m. *consulship.*

consŭlo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -sultum, 3 v. n. *to consult.*

consultum, -ī, n. *decision, decree.*

consūmo, -ĕrĕ, -sumpsī, -sumptum, 3 v. a. *to use up, to consume, to destroy.*

contendo, -ĕrĕ, -tendī, -tentum, 3 v. n. *to fight, to strive, to exert oneself, to hasten, to be urgent about;* **contendĕrĕ ăd**, *to march quickly to.*

contentĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *contest, controversy.*

contĭnentĕr, adv. *continually, without stopping.*

contĭnĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -tentum, 2 v. a. *to bound, to hold together, to hold back* **13** 23.

contingo, -ĕrĕ, -tĭgī, -tactum, 3 v. a. and n. *to touch upon, to reach, to happen.*

contĭnŭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *continuous, unbroken.*

contrā, adv. *in opposition;* prep. [acc.] *against, opposite to.*

contrăho, -ĕrĕ, -traxī, -tractum, 3 v. a. *to draw together, to collect.*

contŭmēlĭă, -ae, f. *insult, outrage.*

convĕnĭo, -īrĕ, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 v. a. and n. *to meet together;* **convĕnīrĕ ălĭquem**, *to visit* or *to meet some one;* impers. **convĕnit**, *it is agreed.*

conventŭs, -ūs, m. *a coming together, a meeting, assize.*

converto, -ĕrĕ, -vertī, -versum, 3 v. a. *to change, to turn.*

convinco, -ĕrĕ, -vīcī, -victum, 3 v. a. *to convict, to prove.*

convŏco, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to call together, to summon.*

cōpĭă, -ae, f. *abundance, supply;* **cōpĭae**, *forces, wealth;* **cōpĭam făcĕrĕ**, *to furnish a supply* **24** 5.

cōpĭōsŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *abundant, well supplied;* **cōpĭōsissĭmŭs**, *most abundantly supplied.*

cōram, adv. *openly, in person.*

cornū, n. indecl. in sing. *a horn, a wing of an army.*

corpŭs, -ŏrĭs, n. *body.*

cŏtīdĭānŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *daily, ordinary* **17** 15.

cŏtīdĭē (**quŏtīdĭē**), adv. *daily, every day.*

Crassŭs, -ī, m. *M. Licinius Crassus,* consul with Pompey B.C. 70 and 55, joined with Pompey and Caesar in the Triumvirate B.C. 60; fell in war with the Parthians B.C. 53. His son **Publĭŭs 46** 7.

crĕmo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to burn, to consume.*

crĕo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to create;* of magistrates, *to elect, to appoint.*

cresco, -ĕrĕ, crēvī, crētum, 3 v. n. *to increase, to grow.*

crŭcĭātŭs, -ūs, m. *torture.*

crūdēlĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *cruelty.*

crūdēlĭtĕr, adv. *cruelly.*

cultŭs, -ūs, m. *refinement, culture.*

cum, adv. *when, since.*

cum, prep. [abl.] *with, together with.*

cŭpĭdē, adv. *eagerly, greedily;* **cŭpĭdĭŭs**, *too eagerly;* **cŭpĭdissĭmē**, *most eagerly.*

cŭpĭdĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *eagerness, desire.*

cŭpĭdŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *eager for, desirous of.*

cŭpĭo, -ĕrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 3 v. a. *to desire, to wish for;* **cŭpĕrĕ Helvētĭīs**, *to wish well to the Helvetii.*

cūr, adv. *why.*

cūră, -ae, f. *care, anxiety;* **cūrae** (dat.) **essĕ**, *to be a care to.*

cūro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to care for, to see done* (with gerundive) **11** 12.

cursŭs, -ūs, m. *running, galloping.*

custōs, -ōdĭs, m. and f. *a guard.*

CXXX, see **centum trīgintā.**

d. = **diem.**

damno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to condemn.*

dē, prep. [abl.], *about, from;* **dē fīnĭbŭs exīrĕ,** *to quit their territory; for;* **dē iniūrĭīs,** *for the injuries;* **quā dē causā,** *for which cause; of, out of;* **paucī dē nostrīs**, *few of our men; just after,* **dē tertĭā vĭgĭlĭā**, *about the third watch.*

dēbĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. a. *to owe, to be bound to do.*

dēcēdo, -ĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessum, 3 v. n. *to depart.*

dĕcem, indecl. num. adj. *ten;* **dĕcem nŏvem**, *nineteen* **7** 9.

dēcerto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to fight it out.*

dēcĭdo, -ĕrĕ, -cĭdī, 3 v. n. *to fall off.*

dĕcĭmŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *tenth.*

dēcĭpĭo, -ĕrĕ, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 v. a. *to deceive.*

dēclāro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to declare.*

dĕcŭrĭō, -ōnĭs, m. *a commander of cavalry, cavalry officer.*

dēdĭtĭcĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *surrendered, given up* [dēdo].

dēdĭtĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a surrender;* **ĭn dēdĭtĭōnem rĕcĭpĕrĕ**, *to receive on surrender.*

dēdūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to lead away.*

dēfătīgo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to wear out, to tire out.*

dēfendo, -ĕrĕ, -fendī, -fensum, 3 v. a. *to defend;* **dēfendĕrĕ ăb ălĭquō**, *to defend from something.*

dēfessŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *wearied* [dēfĕtiscŏr].

dēĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 v. a. *to cast down;* **spē dēiectī**, *disappointed.*

deindĕ, adv. *in the second place, then.*

dēlībĕro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to deliberate.*

dēlĭgo, -ĕrĕ, -lēgī, -lectum, 3 v. a. *to choose, to pick out;* **dēlectī**, *picked men;* **lĕgĭō dēlectă 41** 20.

dēlĭgo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to tie up.*

dēmĭnŭo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -ūtum, 3 v. a. *to diminish, to lessen.*

dēmitto, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. *to let fall, to drop;* **căpĭtĕ dēmissō**, *with hanging head.*

dēmonstro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to point out, to show.*

dēmum, adv. *at length;* **tum dēmum**, *not till then.*

dēnĕgo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to refuse.*

dēnī, -ae, -ă, num. adj. *ten each.*

dēnĭquĕ, adv. *in fine, at last;* **multō dēnĭquĕ dĭē**, *late in the day and only then, not till late.*

dēnuntĭo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to warn, to speak strongly.*

dēperdo, -ĕrĕ, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, 3 v. a. *to lose.*

dēpōno, -ĕrĕ, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, 3 v. a. *to lay down, to lay aside.*

dēpŏpŭlŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to lay waste;* also **dēpŏpŭlo**, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, see **10** 3.

dēprĕcātŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *a mediator, an intercessor, one who begs another off.*

dēsĕro, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -rtum, 3 v. a. *to desert.*

dēsigno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to point out, to indicate.*

dēsisto, -ĕrĕ, -stĭtī, -stĭtum, 3 v. n. *to stand off, to desist.*

despēro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to despair.*

despĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -spexī, -spectum, 3 v. a. *to despise, to look down upon.*

destĭtŭo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -ūtum, 3 v. a. *to abandon, to desert.*

destringo, -ĕrĕ, -strinxī, -strictum, 3 v. a. *to strip off, to draw;* **destrictīs glădĭīs**, *with drawn swords.*

dēsum, -essĕ, -fŭī, irreg. v. n. *to fail, to be wanting.*

dēsŭpĕr, adv. *from above.*
dētĕrĭŏr, -ŭs, comp. adj. *worse.*
dēterrĕo, -ērĕ, -terrŭī, -terrĭtum, 2 v. a. *to frighten off, to deter.*
dētrăho, -ĕrĕ, -traxī, -tractum, 3 v. a. *to remove.*
dētrīmentum, -ī, n. *damage.*
dĕŭs, -ī, m. *a god.*
dēvĕho, -ĕrĕ, -vexī, -vectum, 3 v. a. *to carry down.*
dextĕr, -tră, -trum, adj. *right.*
dextră, -ae, f. *the right hand* [properly **manus** understood with adj. **dextĕr**, -tră, -trum].
dĭcĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *rule, jurisdiction.*
dīco, -ĕrĕ, dixī, dictum, 3 v. a. and n. *to say, to speak, to tell;* **dĭem dīcĕrĕ**, *to name a day.*
dictĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a saying;* **causae dictĭō**, *pleading a cause, trial.*
dictum, -ī, n. *a word;* **dictō audiens**, *obedient.*
dĭēs, -ēī, m. and f. in sing., m. in pl. *a day;* **dĭem ex dĭē dūcĕrĕ**, *to put off from day to day;* **antĕ dĭem**, *the day before;* **in dĭem certam**, *by a fixed day.*
diffĕro, -ferrĕ, distŭlī, dīlātum, irreg. v. a. *to differ; to scatter, to remove; to postpone.*
diffĭcĭlĭs, -ĕ, adj. *difficult.*
dignĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *dignity, rank.*
dīlĭgentĭă, -ae, f. *diligence, care.*
dīmitto, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. *to dismiss.*
dĭrĭmo, -ĕrĕ, -ēmī, -emptum, 3 v. a. *to break off, to stop.*
discēdo, -ĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessum, 3 v. n. *to depart, to quit, to withdraw.*
discĭplīnă, -ae, f. *instruction, discipline.*
disco, -ĕrĕ, dĭdĭcī, 3 v. a. *to learn.*
dīsĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 v. a. *to hurl apart, to scatter.*
dispergo, -ĕrĕ, -spersī, -spersum, 3 v. a. *to disperse.*
dispōno, -ĕrĕ, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, 3 v. a. *to place about, to station in various places.*
dĭū, adv. *for a long time, long;* **dĭūtĭŭs**, *longer;* **dĭūtissĭmē**, *for a very long time, longest.*
dĭurnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *by day.*
dĭūturnĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *length, long continuance.*
dĭūturnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *long continued, lasting;* **dĭūturnĭŏr**, *more lasting.*
dīvĕs, -ĭtĭs, adj. *rich;* **dītĭŏr**, *richer;* **dītissĭmŭs**, *richest.*
Dīvĭcō, -ōnĭs, m. *Divico*, a chieftain of the Helvetii.
dīvĭdo, -ĕrĕ, -vīsī, -vīsum, 3 v. a. *to divide.*
Dīvĭtĭăcŭs, -ī, m. *Divitiacus*, a chieftain of the Aedui.
do, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătum, 1 v. a. *to give;* **in matrĭmōnĭum dărĕ**, *to give in marriage.*
dŏcĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, doctum, 2 v. a. *to teach, to point out.*
dŏlĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. n. *to feel pain, to suffer, to grieve.*
dŏlŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *pain, grief.*
dŏlŭs, -ī, m. *a trick, a stratagem.*
dŏmĭcĭlĭum, -ī, n. *a home, a dwelling place.*
dŏmŭs, -ī or -ūs, f. *home;* **dŏmī**, loc. *at home;* **dŏmum**, (*to*) *home;* **dŏmō**, *from home.*
dōno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to give, to present.*
Dūbĭs, -ĭs, m. *the river Dubis*, mod. *Doubs.*
dŭbĭtātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *doubt, hesitation.*
dŭbĭto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to doubt, to hesitate;* **nōn dŭbĭ-**

tārĕ quīn sĭt, *not to doubt its being so.*

dŭbĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *doubtful.*

dŭcentī, -ae, -ă, num. adj. *two hundred.*

dūco, -ĕrĕ, duxī, ductum, 3 v. a. *to lead;* **ĭn mātrĭmōnĭum dūcĕrĕ**, *to marry; to think* 3 13; *to put off* 14 15; **dĭem ex dĭē dūcĕrĕ**, *to put off from day to day;* **ăd dūcendum bellum**, *to protract the war.*

dum, adv. *while, until.*

Dumnŏrix, -ĭgĭs, m. *Dumnorix*, a chieftain of the Aedui.

dŭō, -ae, -ō, num. adj. *two.*

dŭŏdĕcim, indecl. num. adj. *twelve.*

dūrŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *hard;* **dūrĭŏr**, *harder.*

dux, dŭcĭs, m. and f. *leader, a guide.*

ē, **ex**, prep. *out of, from;* **ūnā ex partĕ**, *on one side;* **altĕrā ex partĕ**, *on the other side;* **quā ex partĕ**, *on which side;* **ex conspectū**, *out of sight;* **ex ĭtĭnĕrĕ**, *on the march;* **ex vincŭlīs dīcĕrĕ**, *to plead in chains;* **quā ex partĕ**, *in which respect;* **ex commūnī consensū**, *by common consent.*

ēdo, -ĕrĕ, ēdĭdī, ēdĭtum, 3 v. a. *to produce, to shew forth, to perform.*

ēdūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to lead out.*

effēmĭno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to make womanish, to render effeminate;* **ănĭmī effēmĭnātī**, *broken spirits.*

effĕro, -ferrĕ, extŭlī, ēlātum, irreg. v. a. *to carry out, to carry away, to make known, to exalt.*

effĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 v. a. *to effect, to make.*

ēgrĕdĭŏr, -ī, -gressŭs sum, 3 dep. v. n. *to march out.*

ēgrĕgĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *remarkable, excellent.*

ēmĭgro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to quit one's home, to migrate.*

ēmitto, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. *to let go, to discharge.*

ĕmo, -ĕrĕ, ēmī, emptum, 3 v. a. *to buy.*

ĕnim [strengthened form of **nam**], conj. *for.*

ēnuntĭo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to make known, to report.*

ĕo, īrĕ, īvī or ĭī, ĭtum, 4 v. n. *to go.*

ĕō, adv. *thither.*

ĕōdem, adv. *to the same place;* **ĕōdem pertĭnērĕ**, *to tend in the same direction.*

ĕquĕs, -ĭtĭs, m. *a horseman, a knight;* **ĕquĭtēs**, *cavalry.*

ĕquester, -trĭs, -trĕ, adj. *of cavalry.*

ĕquĭtātŭs, -ūs, m. *cavalry.*

ĕquŭs, -ī, m. *a horse;* **ĕquō admissō**, *at full gallop.*

ērĭpĭo, -ĕrĕ, -rĭpŭī, -reptum, 3 v. a. *to snatch away;* **sē ērĭpĕrĕ**, *to escape.*

ĕt, conj. *and, also.*

ĕtĭam, adv. *even, also, besides.*

etsī, conj. *although.*

ēvello, -ĕrĕ, -vellī, -vulsum, 3 v. a. *to tear out, to pull out.*

excĭpĭo, -ĕrĕ, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 v. a. *to receive.*

exemplum, -ī, n. *precedent, example, specimen.*

exĕo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ĭtum, 4 v. n. *to go out, to go forth.*

exercĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. a. *to exercise.*

exercĭtatĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *exercise, training.*

exercĭtātŭs, -ă, -um, partic. adj. *exercised;* **exercĭtātissĭmŭs**, *most thoroughly exercised.*

exercĭtŭs, -ūs, m. *an army* [exerceo, *to train*].

existĭmātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *opinion, estimate.*

existĭmo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. and n. *to think, to deem.*

expĕdĭo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 4 v. a. *to disencumber, to clear.*

expĕdītŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *unencumbered, free;* **expĕdītĭŏr**, *swifter;* **ĭtĕr expĕdītĭŭs**, *an easier route.*

expĕrĭŏr, -īrī, -pertŭs sum, 4 dep. v. a. *to experience, to put to the test.*

explōrātŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *a scout, a pioneer,* one sent out to reconnoitre.

exprĭmo, -ĕrĕ, -pressī, -pressum, 3 v. a. *to extract.*

expugno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to take by storm.*

exquīro, -ĕrĕ, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, 3 v. a. *to enquire into, to search out.*

exsĕquŏr, -ī, -sĕcūtŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to follow up, to exact, to enforce.*

exspecto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to wait for, to expect.*

extrā, prep. [acc.] *outside of, outside.*

extrēmŭs, -ă, -um, adj. superl. of **extĕrŭs**, -ĕră, -ĕrum, *last, extreme.*

exūro, -ĕrĕ, -ussī, -ustum, 3 v. a. *to burn up.*

Făbĭŭs Maxĭmŭs, Q., *Q. Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus,* who as consul B.C. 121 conquered the Arverni and Ruteni.

făcĭlĕ, adv. *easily;* **făcĭlĭŭs**, *more easily;* **făcillĭmē**, *most easily.*

făcĭlĭs, -ĕ, adj. *easy;* **făcĭlĭor**, -ĭŭs, *easier.*

făcĭnŭs, -ŏrĭs, n. *a crime.*

făcĭo, -ĕrĕ, fēcī, factum, 3 v. a. *to make, to do;* **perfăcĭlĕ factū**, *very easy of performance.*

factĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *faction, party.*

factum, -ī, n. *action, deed.*

făcultās, -ātĭs, f. *power, opportunity, supply;* **dătā făcultātĕ ĭtĭnĕrĭs făcĭundī**, *if leave were granted them to march* **6** 22; **făcultātēs**, pl. *means, resources.*

fămēs, -ĭs, f. *hunger, famine;* **fămem tŏlĕrārĕ**, *to keep off hunger.*

fămĭlĭă, -ae, f. *a household, a family.*

fămĭlĭārĭs, -ĕ, adj. *connected with a household, familiar.*

fămĭlĭārĭs, -ĭs, m. and f. *a friend.*

fās, indecl. n. *right, lawful.*

fātum, -ī, n. *fate.*

făvĕo, -ērĕ, fāvī, fautum, 2 v. n. *to favour.*

fēlīcĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *good luck.*

fĕrē, adv. *almost, generally.*

fĕro, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātum, irreg. v. a. *to bear, to bring, to carry, to endure;* **ferrĕ auxĭlĭum**, *to bring aid.*

ferrum, -ī, n. *iron.*

fĕrŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *wild, savage.*

fĭdēs, -ĕī, f. *faith, fidelity;* **fĭdem hăbērĕ**, *to have confidence in;* **fĭdem dărĕ**, *to promise.*

fīlĭă, -ae, f. *a daughter* [pl. filiae, filiarum, filiabus].

fīlĭŭs, -ī, m. *a son.*

fingo, -ĕrĕ, finxī, fictum, 3 v. a. *to feign, to make up;* **fingĕrĕ vultum**, *to keep one's countenance, to keep up appearances.*

fīnĭs, -ĭs, m. and f. *an end, a*

limit; **fīnem făcĕrĕ**, *to put an end to*; m. pl. **fīnēs**, -ĭum, *borders, territory.*

fīnĭtĭmŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *bordering, neighbouring*; **fīnĭtĭmī**, *neighbours.*

fīo, fĭĕrī, factŭs sum, 3 semi-dep. v. (used as passive of **făcio**), *to become, to be done.*

firmŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *strong, firm*; **firmissĭmŭs**, *strongest.*

Flaccŭs, -ī, m. *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, propraetor of Gaul B.C. 83.

flāgĭto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to demand, to ask earnestly for.*

flĕo, -ērĕ, flēvī, flētum, 2 v. n. *to weep.*

flētŭs, -ūs, m. *weeping.*

flōrens, -ntĭs, adj. (part.) *flourishing*; **flōrentissĭmŭs**, *most flourishing.*

flūmĕn, -ĭnĭs, n. *a stream, a river.*

flŭo, -ĕrĕ, fluxī, fluxum, 3 v. n. *to flow.*

fŏrĕ, fut. inf. of **sum.**

fortĭs, -ĕ, adj. *brave*; **fortissĭmŭs**, *bravest.*

fortĭtūdō, -ĭnĭs, f. *courage, bravery.*

fortūnă, -ae, f. *fortune*; pl. **fortūnae**, -ārum, *resources, means.*

fossă, -ae, f. *a ditch.*

frango, -ĕrĕ, frēgī, fractum, 3 v. a. *to break, to discourage.*

frātĕr, frātrĭs, m. *a brother.*

frāternŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *of a brother, fraternal.*

frīgŭs, -ŏrĭs, n. *cold.*

fructŭōsŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *fruitful, profitable*; **fructŭōsissĭmŭs**, *most profitable.*

fructŭs, -ūs, m. *fruit, produce.*

frūmentārĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *of corn, corn-producing*; **rēs frūmentārĭă**, *the supply of corn.*

frūmentum, -ī, n. *corn.*

frux, frūgĭs, f. usually pl. **frūgēs**, -um, *corn.*

fŭgă, -ae, f. *flight.*

fŭgĭo, -ĕrĕ, fūgī, fŭgĭtum, 3 v. n. *to fly.*

fŭgĭtīvŭs, -ī, m. *a runaway slave.*

fŭrŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *madness.*

fŭtūrum essĕ, fut. inf. of **sum**, *to be about to be, that it will come to pass.*

Găbīnĭus, -ī, m. *Aulus Gabinius*, consul B.C. 58.

Gāĭŭs, -ī, m., see **Caburŭs**, **Flaccŭs**, **Mărĭŭs** and **Prōcillŭs**.

Gallĭă, -ae, f. *Gaul.* The name included northern Italy from the Rubicon to the Alps, and beyond the Alps all France and the Netherlands up to the Rhine, with parts of Switzerland.

Gallĭcŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *Gallic, of the Gauls.*

Gallŭs, -ī, m. *a Gaul.*

Gărumnă, -ae, m. and f. *the river Garumna, the Garonne.*

Gĕnāvă, -ae, f. *Geneva*, a city of the Allobroges on the Lacus Lemannus.

gĕnĕrātim, adv. *in races.*

gĕnŭs, -ĕrĭs, n. *kind.*

Germānŭs, -ī, m. *a German.*

gĕro, -ĕrĕ, gessī, gestum, 3 v. a. *to carry on, to wage*; **mălĕ rē gestā**, *after a defeat.*

glădĭŭs, -ī, m. *a sword.*

glōrĭă, -ae, f. *glory, fame.*

glōrĭŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to boast, to glory in.*

Graecŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *Greek.*

Graiocĕlī, -ōrum, m. pl. the *Graioceli*, a tribe living near Mt Cenis.

grandĭs, -ĕ, adj. *large.*

grātĭă, -ae, f. *gratitude, favour; popularity, influence;* **grātĭam rĕferrĕ**, *to shew gratitude;* **magnā ăpŭd plēbem grātĭā**, *of great influence with the people;* **plūrĭmum grātĭā possĕ**, *to have great influence;* **grātĭas ăgĕrĕ**, *to thank.*

grātŭlātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *congratulation.*

grātŭlŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to congratulate.*

grātŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *pleasing* 40 22.

grăvĭs, -ĕ, adj. *heavy; serious, severe;* **grăvĭŏr**, *more painful, more severe;* **nē quĭd grăvĭŭs stătŭĕrĕt**, *not to take any severe measure;* **grăvissĭmŭs**, *most severe.*

grăvĭtĕr, adv. *heavily, seriously;* **grăvĭtĕr ferrĕ**, *to take to heart;* **grăvĭŭs ferrĕ**, *to be somewhat annoyed;* **grăvĭŭs**, *more grievously;* **grăvissĭmē**, *most grievously.*

grăvŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. n. *to make difficulties, to be reluctant.*

hăbĕo, -ērĕ, hăbŭī, hăbĭtum, 2 v. a. *to have, to hold, to consider;* **in nŭmĕrō hostĭum hăbērĕ**, *to regard in the light of enemies;* **sătĭs hăbērĕ**, *to be satisfied;* **ōrātĭōnem hăbērĕ**, *to deliver a speech.*

Harūdēs, -um, m. pl. *the Harudes*, a German tribe.

Helvētĭī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Helvetii*, a tribe living in Switzerland between Geneva and Bâle.

Helvētĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *Helvetian.*

hĭbernŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *of winter;* **hĭbernă** (sc. **castră**), *winter quarters.*

hĭc, haec, hōc, gen. hūiŭs, pron. *this, this man here, this just mentioned;* **hōc**, *by this much.*

hĭĕmo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to pass the winter, to winter.*

Hispānĭă, -ae, f. *Spain.*

hŏmŏ, -ĭnĭs, m. and f. *a man, a human being* (including women and children).

hŏnestŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *honourable;* **hŏnestissĭmŭs**, *most honourable.*

hŏnŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *honour.*

hŏnōrĭfĭcŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *complimentary.*

hōră, -ae, f. *an hour.*

horrĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, 2 v. a. and n. *to tremble, to tremble at, to fear.*

hortŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to exhort, to advise.*

hospĕs, -ĭtĭs, m. *a guest, a guest-friend.*

hospĭtĭum, -ī, n. *hospitality.*

hostĭs, -ĭs, m. *an enemy.*

hūc, adv. *hither.*

hūmānĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *humanity, civilization, refinement.*

ĭbĭ, adv. *there.*

ictŭs, -ūs, m. *a stroke, a blow.*

ĭdem, ĕădem, ĭdem, gen. ēiusdem, adj. *the same.*

ĭdōnĕŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *suitable.*

Īdŭs, -ŭum, f. pl. *the Ides*, 15th of March, May, July and October, 13th of other months.

ignĭs, -ĭs [abl. -ĕ or -ī], m. *fire.*

ignōro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *not to know, to be ignorant of.*

ignosco, -ĕrĕ, -nōvī, -nōtum, 3 v. a. *to pardon.*

illĕ, -ă, -ŭd, gen. illīŭs, pron. *that one, he, that;* **hĭc...illĕ**, *the latter...the former.*

illĭc, adv. *there, in that place.*

immortālĭs, -ĕ, adj. *immortal.*

impĕdīmentum, -ī, n. *a hindrance;* **impĕdīmentă**, pl. *baggage.*
impĕdĭo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 4 v. a. *to hinder, to hamper;* **impĕdītum ĭtĕr**, *a difficult route.*
impello, -ĕrĕ, -pŭlī, -pulsum, 3 v. a. *to impel, to urge.*
impendĕo, -ērĕ, 2 v. n. *to hang over.*
impĕrātŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *commander.*
impĕrītŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *unskilled.*
impĕrĭum, -ī, n. *supreme power, command;* **impĕrĭă**, pl. *supremacy.*
impĕro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. and n. *to command, to be in command; to impose upon, to make requisitions upon;* **prōvincĭae mīlĭtum nŭmĕrum impĕrăt**, *he orders the province to furnish a number of soldiers.*
impētro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to obtain, to prevail upon.*
impĕtŭs, -ūs, m. *a charge, an attack.*
implōro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to implore, to beg for.*
impōno, -ĕrĕ, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, 3 v. a. *to put upon, to impose.*
importo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to import.*
imprīmīs, adv. *firstly, especially.*
imprŏbŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *wicked, unscrupulous.*
imprōvīsŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *unforeseen;* **imprōvīsō**, adv. *unexpectedly, suddenly.*
impugno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to attack.*
impūnĕ, adv. *with impunity;* **impūnĕ ferrĕ**, *to get off scot free for* **12** 24.
impūnĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *impunity, freedom from punishment.*
ĭn, prep. [abl.] *in, on, upon, among;* [acc.] *into, against, to;* **ĭn longĭtūdĭnem**, *lengthwise;* **ĭn tertĭum annum**, *the third year hence;* **ĭn rĕlĭquum tempŭs**, *for the future.*
incendo, -ĕrĕ, -cendī, -censum, 3 v. a. *to set fire to, to burn.*
incīdo, -ĕrĕ, -cĭdī, 3 v. n. *to fall in with.*
incīto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to set in motion, to incite, to move strongly.*
incŏlo, -ĕrĕ, -cŏlŭī, 3 v. a. and n. *to inhabit, to dwell.*
incŏlŭmĭs, -ĕ, adj. *safe.*
incommŏdum, -ī, n. *a disadvantage, a misfortune.*
incrēdĭbĭlĭs, -ĕ, adj. *immense, surpassing.*
incūso, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to blame, to reproach.*
indĕ, adv. *thence, from that place; then, from that time.*
indĭcĭum, -ī, n. *information.*
indīco, -ĕrĕ, -dixī, -dictum, 3 v. a. *to proclaim.*
indūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to induce, to lead on.*
indulgĕo, -ērĕ, -dulsī, -dultum, 2 v. a. *to indulge, to favour.*
ĭnermŭs, -ă, -um (**inermĭs**, -ĕ), adj. *unarmed.*
infĕro, -ferrĕ, -tŭlī, illātum, irreg. v. a. *to inflict upon, to bring to, to carry against;* **signă inferrĕ**, *to attack, to charge;* **bellum inferrĕ**, *to invade, to attack.*
infĕrŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *below, underneath;* **infĕrĭŏr**, *lower;* **infĭmŭs** or **īmŭs**, *lowest.*
inflecto, -ĕrĕ, -flexī, -flexum, 3 v. a. *to bend down.*
inflŭo, -ĕrĕ, -fluxī, -fluxum, 3 v. n. *to flow into.*

ingens, -ntĭs, adj. *vast, huge.*

ĭnĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 v. a. *to throw upon, to cause to.*

ĭnĭmīcŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *unfriendly, hostile.*

ĭnĭmīcŭs, -ī, m. *an enemy.*

ĭnīquŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *unfair.*

ĭnĭtĭum, -ī, n. *a beginning.*

iniūrĭă, -ae, f. *injustice, injury;* **iniūrĭā**, *wrongfully.*

iniussū, adv. *without orders:* properly a substantive in ablative. **iniussu suo**, *without his orders.* No other case of **iniussus** is used.

innascŏr, -ī, innātŭs sum, 3 dep. v. n. *to be implanted.*

innŏcentĭă, -ae, f. *innocence, blamelessness.*

ĭnŏpĭă, -ae, f. *want, poverty, failure of supplies.*

ĭnŏpīnans, -ntĭs, adj. *unsuspecting, unaware.*

inscĭens, -ntĭs, adj. *unknowing, in ignorance.*

insĕquŏr, -ī, -sĕcūtŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to follow up, to pursue.*

insĭdĭae, -ārum, f. pl. *an ambush, a stratagem.*

insignĕ, -ĭs, n. *a decoration.*

insignĭs, -ĕ, adj. *marked, signal.*

insĭlĭo, -īrĕ, -sĭlŭī, 4 v. n. *to leap upon.*

insŏlentĕr, adv. *insolently, insultingly.*

instĭtŭo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -ūtum, 3 v. a. *to set up, to set in array; to instruct, to educate.*

instĭtūtum, -ī, n. *a habit, a practice, an institution.*

insto, -ārĕ, -stĭtī, -stātum, 1 v. n. *to be at hand, to press on.*

instrŭo, -ĕrĕ, -struxī, -structum, 3 v. a. *to fit up, to array.*

intellĕgo, -ĕrĕ, -lexī, -lectum, 3 v. a. *to understand, to learn.*

intĕr, prep. [acc.] *between, among, in the course of* **31** 22; **intĕr sē**, *mutually, with each other.*

intercēdo, -ĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessum, 3 v. n. *to come between, to intervene.*

interclūdo, -ĕrĕ, -clūsī, -clūsum, 3 v. a. *to shut off, to intercept.*

interdīco, -ĕrĕ, -dixī, -dictum, 3 v. a. *to forbid, to warn off from.*

interdĭū, adv. *in the day time, by day.*

interdum, adv. *at times, sometimes.*

intĕrĕā, adv. *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interfĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 v. a. *to kill.*

intĕrim, adv. *meanwhile.*

intermitto, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. and n. *to leave a space, to interrupt.*

internĕcĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *massacre, general slaughter.*

interpello, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to interfere with.*

interpōno, -ĕrĕ, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, 3 v. a. *to put between, to interpose.*

interprĕs, -ĕtĭs, m. and f. *a mediator, an interpreter.*

intersum, -essĕ, -fŭī, irreg. v. n. *to be between, to be engaged in.*

intervallum, -ī, n. *distance, interval:* lit. space between stakes (*valli*) of a rampart.

intrā, prep. [acc.] *within.*

intŭĕŏr, -ērī, -tŭĭtŭs sum, 2 dep. v. a. *to gaze on, to fix the eyes on.*

invĕnĭo, -īrĕ, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 v. a. *to find.*

invictŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *unconquered, invincible.*

invīto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to invite.*

invītŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *unwilling, against one's will.*

ipsĕ, -ă, -um, gen. ipsīŭs, pron. *he himself, the very.*

īrācundŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *wrathful, passionate.*

irrīdĭcŭlē, adv. *unwittily.*

ĭs, ĕă, ĭd, gen. ēius, pron. *this, that;* **ĕō**, *on that account, by that fact;* **ĕō quŏd**, *by the fact that;* **ĕō ŭt**, *to the end that.*

ĭtă, adv. *so, thus.*

Ītălĭă, -ae, f. *Italy.*

ĭtăquĕ, adv. *and so, therefore.*

ĭtem, adv. *in the same manner, so, also.*

ĭtĕr, -ĭnĕrĭs, n. *a journey, a route, a march;* **ĭtĕr făcĕrĕ**, *to march;* **ex ĭtĭnĕrĕ**, *on the march;* **magnīs ĭtĭnĕrĭbŭs**, *with forced marches;* **maxĭmă ĭtĭnĕră**, *very long forced marches.*

ĭtĕrum, adv. *again, a second time.*

iacto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to toss, to mention, to discuss.*

iam, adv. *now, at last, even.*

iŭbă, -ae, f. *mane.*

iŭbĕo, -ērĕ, iussī, iussum, 2 v. a. *to order, to command.*

iūdĭcĭum, -ī, n. *judgment, opinion, trial.*

iūdĭco, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to decide, to judge, to think.*

iŭgum, -ī, n. *a yoke, a mountain ridge;* **sŭb iŭgum mittĕrĕ**, *to send under the yoke,* to force a conquered army to march under a spear laid across two upright spears.

iūmentum, -ī, n. *a beast of burden, pack-horse.*

iungo, -ĕrĕ, iunxī, iunctum, 3 v. a. *to join, to unite.*

Iūră, -ae, m. *the Jura,* a chain of mountains in Gaul.

iūro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to swear.*

iūs, iūrĭs, n. *justice, right; legal position, rights;* **iūs bellī**, *the laws of war.*

iusiūrandum, iūrĭs iūrandī, n. *an oath.*

iustĭtĭă, -ae, f. *justice, fairness.*

iustŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *just;* **iustissĭmŭs**, *most just.*

iŭvo, -ārĕ, iūvī, iūtum, 1 v. a. *to help, to aid.*

Kal. for **Kălendae**, -ārum, f. pl. *the Calends, the first day of the month.*

L. for **Lūcĭŭs**, see **Aemĭlĭŭs**, **Cassĭŭs**, **Pīsō** and **Sullă**.

Lăbĭēnŭs, -ī, m. *Titus Attius Labienus,* one of Caesar's legati.

lăbŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *labour.*

lăbōro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to be in trouble, to be anxious about, to be in difficulties.*

lăcesso, -ĕrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 3 v. a. *to harass, to provoke, to attack.*

lăcrĭmă, -ae, f. *a tear.*

lăcŭs, -ūs, m. *a lake.*

lăpĭs, -ĭdĭs, m. *a stone.*

largĭŏr, -īrī, -ītŭs sum, 4 dep. v. a. *to give liberally, to supply lavishly.*

largĭtĕr, adv. *lavishly, liberally;* **largĭtĕr possĕ**, *to have ample power.*

largĭtĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a giving lavishly, liberality, bribery.*

lātē, adv. *far and wide, widely.*

lātĭtūdō, -ĭnĭs, f. *breadth, width.*

Latobrīgī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Latobrigi*, a tribe of Germans.
lătŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *broad, wide;* **lātissĭmŭs**, *very broad.*
lătŭs, -ĕrĭs, n. *a side, a flank;* **lătĕrĕ ăpertō**, *on the exposed flank*, i.e. *the right.*
laus, laudĭs, f. *praise.*
lēgātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *an embassy.*
lēgātŭs, -ī, m. one sent or commissioned by another, (1) *an ambassador*, (2) *a lieutenant* or *legate* of a Roman Imperator. Caesar had 12 *legati* under him in Gaul, an unusually large number, who formed his staff.
lĕgĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a legion*, a body of men varying in number at different periods from 3000 to 5000, and divided into 10 cohorts [from lĕgĕrĕ, *to pick, to select*].
lĕgĭōnārĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *belonging to the legion.*
Lēmannŭs, -ī, m. sc. **lăcŭs**, *the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman.*
lēnĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *gentleness, gentle current.*
Leucī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Leuci*, or *Levaci*, a Gallic tribe on the Moselle.
lex, lēgĭs, f. *a law.*
lĭbentĕr, adv. *with pleasure, willingly.*
lībĕr, -ĕră, -ĕrum, adj. *free.*
lībĕrālĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *liberality.*
lībĕrē, adv. *freely;* **lībĕrĭŭs**, *more freely.*
līběrī, -ōrum, m. pl. *children.*
lībertās, -ātĭs, f. *liberty, freedom.*
lĭcĕŏr, -ērī, lĭcĭtŭs sum, 2 dep. v. n. *to make a bid, to bid*, as at an auction.
lĭcĕt, -ērĕ, -ŭĭt, 2 impers. v. *it is allowed, it is lawful.*
Lingŏnēs, -um, m. pl. *the Lingones*, a tribe in Gaul living near the Vosges Mountains.
linguă, -ae, f. *a tongue, language.*
lintĕr, -trĭs, f. *a skiff, a boat.*
Liscŭs, -ī, m. *Liscus*, one of the Aedui and brother of Divitiacus.
littĕră, -ae, f. *a letter* (of the alphabet); pl. **littĕrae**, *a writing, an epistle.*
lŏcŭs, -ī, m. [pl. lŏcī or lŏcă, n.] *a place, a position, a country; an opportunity.*
longē, adv. *far, far off;* **longĭŭs ăbessĕ**, *to be farther away;* **longissĭmē**, *very far.*
longinquŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *long, lasting.*
longĭtūdō, -ĭnĭs, f. *length.*
longŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *long;* **longĭŏr**, *more distant* 35 29.
lŏquŏr, -ī, lŏcūtŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. and n. *to speak, to say.*
lūnă, -ae, f. *the moon.*
lux, lūcĭs, f. *light;* **prīmā lūcĕ**, *at daybreak.*

M. for **Marcŭs**, see **Crassŭs**, **Messālă**, **Mētĭŭs** and **Pīsō.**
măgĭs, adv. *more;* **maxĭmē**, *most.*
magistrātŭs, -ūs, m. (1) *a magistracy*, (2) *a magistrate.*
magnĭtūdō, -ĭnĭs, f. *greatness, size.*
magnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *great;* **magnō ŏpĕrĕ**, *greatly;* **māiŏr**, *greater, older;* **maxĭmŭs**, *greatest;* **magnīs ĭtĭnĕrĭbŭs**, *by forced marches;* **maxĭmīs ĭtĭnĕrĭbŭs**, *by very long forced marches.*
māiōrēs, -um, m. and f. pl. *ancestors*, see **magnŭs.**
mălĕ, adv. *ill, badly, unsuccessfully;* **pēiŭs**, *worse.*

mălĕfĭcium, -ī, n. *harm*, *mischief*.

mandātum, -ī, n. *a message*, *a charge*; **in mandātīs dărĕ**, *to instruct*, *to enjoin*.

mando, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to entrust*, *to commit*, *to instruct*.

mănĕo, -ērĕ, mansī, mansum, 2 v. n. *to remain*.

mănŭs, -ūs, f. *a hand*, *a band*, *a troop*.

Marcomanī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Marcomani*, a German tribe.

Mărĭŭs, -ī, m. *Gaius Marius*.

mătără, -ae, f. a weapon used by the Gauls, *a pike*.

mātĕr, -trĭs, f. *a mother*; **sŏrŏr ex matrĕ**, *a half sister*.

māterfămĭlĭae, mātrisfămĭlĭae, f. *a matron*.

mātrĭmōnĭum, -ī, n. *marriage*, *matrimony*.

Mātrŏnă, -ae, m. *the river Marne*, flowing into the Seine.

mātūrē, adv. *early*, *quickly*; **mātūrĭŭs**, *earlier*; **māturrĭmē**, *very quickly*, *most promptly*.

mātūro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. and n. *to hasten*, *to make haste*.

mātūrŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *early*, *mature*, *ripe*.

maxĭmē, adv. *especially*, *to the greatest degree*, see **măgĭs**.

maxĭmŭs, -ă, -um, superl. adj. *greatest*, see **magnŭs**.

Maxĭmŭs, -ī, m. see **Făbĭŭs**.

mĕdĭōcrĭtĕr, adv. *to a moderate degree*, *moderately*.

mĕdĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *middle*, *half-way*; **in collĕ mĕdĭō**, *half way up the hill*.

mĕmŏrĭă, -ae, f. *memory*; **mĕmŏrĭā tĕnērĕ**, *to remember*; **mĕmŏrĭam prōdĕrĕ**, *to hand down a record*; **mĕmŏrĭam dēpōnĕrĕ**, *to forget*.

mens, -ntĭs, f. *mind*.

mensĭs, -ĭs, m. *a month*.

mercātŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *a merchant*, *a trader*.

mercēs, -ēdĭs, f. *hire*, *pay*.

mĕrĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. a. and **mĕrĕŏr**, -ērī, mĕrĭtŭs sum, 2 dep. v. a. *to deserve*; **mĕrērī dē**, *to serve one*, *to deserve well of one*.

mĕrīdĭēs, -ēī, m. *midday*.

mĕrĭtum, -ī, n. *desert*, *service*; **mĕrĭtō** as adv. *deservedly*.

Messālă, -ae, m. *M. Valerius Messala*, consul in B.C. 61.

mētĭŏr, -īrī, mensŭs sum, 4 dep. v. a. *to measure*, *to deal out*.

Mētĭŭs, -ī, m. *Marcus Metius*, a Romanized Gaul.

mīlĕs, -ĭtĭs, m. *a soldier*; *soldiery*.

mīlĭtārĭs, -ĕ, adj. *of soldiers*, *of war*, see **res**.

millĕ, indecl. num. s. and adj. *a thousand*; **millĕ passŭs**, or **passŭum**, *a mile* (a thousand paces); pl. **mīlĭă**, -ĭum, n. *thousands*; **mīlĭă passŭum**, *miles*.

mĭnĭmē, adv. *least*.

mĭnĭmŭs, -ă, -um, superl. adj. *least*, *smallest*; **mĭnĭmum**, adv. *least*, *very little*.

mĭnŏr, -ōrĭs, comp. adj. *less*, *smaller*; **mĭnŭs**, adv. *less*; **nĭhĭlō mĭnŭs**, *none the less*; **mĭnŭs vălērĕ**, *to be less powerful*; with gen. **mĭnŭs dŭbĭtātĭōnĭs**, *less of doubt*.

mĭnŭo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -ūtum, 3 v. a. *to diminish*, *to lessen*.

mīrŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to wonder at*, *to admire*.

mīrŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *wonderful*, *astonishing*.

mĭsĕr, -ă, -um, adj. *miserable*; **mĭsĕrĭŏr**, *more miserable*.

mĭsĕrŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to pity, to bemoan.*
mitto, -ĕrĕ, mīsī, missum, 3 v. a. *to send, to discharge, to shoot.*
mŏdŏ, adv. *only, lately;* **nōn mŏdŏ**, *not only.*
mŏdŭs, -ī, m. *manner;* **mīrum in mŏdum**, *wonderfully.*
mōlīmentum, -ī, n. *effort, trouble.*
mŏlo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 3 v. a. *to grind.*
mŏnĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. a. *to advise, to warn, to remind.*
mons, -ntĭs, m. *a mountain.*
mŏrĭŏr, mŏrī, mortŭŭs sum, 3 dep. v. n. *to die.*
mŏrŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to hinder;* v. n. *to delay, to loiter.*
mors, -rtĭs, f. *death.*
mōs, mōrĭs, m. *a custom, a habit.*
mŏvĕo, -ērĕ, mōvī, mōtum, 2 v. a. *to move;* **castră mŏvērĕ**, *to break up camp.*
mŭlĭĕr, -ĭĕrĭs, f. *a woman.*
multĭtūdō, -ĭnĭs, f. *number, the multitude.*
multō, adv. *much.*
multŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *much, many;* **multō diē**, *late in the day;* **ăd multam noctem**, *till late at night;* **plūs**, *more;* **plūrĭmŭs**, *most;* **plūrĭmum possĕ**, *to have very great power.*
mūnĭo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 4 v. a. *to fortify, to protect.*
mūnītĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *fortification* (the act of fortifying), *a fortification.*
mūnŭs, -ĕrĭs, n. *a gift.*
mūrŭs, -ī, m. *a wall.*

nam and **namquĕ**, conj. *for.*
Nammeiŭs, -ī, m. *Nammeius*, a Helvetian ambassador.
nanciscŏr, -ī, nactŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to obtain.*
Nasuă, -ae, m. *Nasua*, a German.
nātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *tribe, nation.*
nātūră, -ae, f. *nature, character;* **nātūră montĭs**, *the natural features of the mountain.*
nāvĭcŭlă, -ae, f. *a boat.*
nāvĭs, -ĭs, f. *a ship.*
nē, conj. *lest, that not;* with imperative, *do not;* see **quĭdem**.
nĕ, interrog. particle, *whether, or.*
nĕc, **nĕquĕ**, adv. *nor, neither.*
nĕcessārĭō, adv. *necessarily.*
nĕcessārĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *necessary, important.*
nĕcessārĭŭs, -ī, m. *a kinsman.*
necessĭtūdō, -ĭnĭs, f. *connexion.*
necnĕ, conj. *or not.*
nĕco, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to kill.*
neglĕgo, -ĕrĕ, -lexī, -lectum, 3 v. a. *to neglect.*
nĕgo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to deny, to say no, to refuse.*
nĕgōtĭum, -ī, n. *business.*
Nēmētēs, -um, m. pl. *the Nemetes*, a German tribe.
nēmō, -ĭnĭs, m. and f. *no one.*
nĕquĕ, see **nĕc**.
nervŭs, -ī, m. *a sinew;* in pl. *strength, vigour* **18** 7.
nēvĕ (**neu**), conj. *neither, nor, and not.*
nex, nĕcĭs, f. *death.*
nĭhĭl, **nīl** or **nĭhĭlum**, -ī, n. *nothing;* **nĭhĭlō sēcĭŭs**, *all the same;* **nĭhĭlō mĭnŭs**, *none the less.*
nĭsĭ, adv. *unless.*
nītŏr, -ī, nīsŭs and nixŭs sum, 3 dep. v. n. *to struggle, to exert oneself; to depend on.*
nōbĭlĭs, -ĕ, adj. *noble, famous, well-born;* **nōbĭlissĭmŭs**, *noblest.*
nōbĭlĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *nobility.*

noctū, adv. [abl. of obsolete *noctus*] *by night.*
nocturnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *nocturnal.*
nōlo, nollĕ, nōlŭī, irreg. v. a. and n. *to be unwilling, not to wish.*
nōmĕn, -ĭnĭs, n. *name, repute;* **sŭō nōmĭnĕ**, *on his own account.*
nōmĭnātim, adv. *by name, exactly.*
nōn, adv. *not.*
nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj. *ninety.*
nondum, adv. *not yet.*
nonnullŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *not none, some.*
nonnunquam, adv. *sometimes* (*not never*).
Nōreiă, -ae, f. *Noreia*, capital of the Norici [*Neumarkt*].
Nōrĭcŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *of the Norici*, a people living in modern Styria.
nostĕr, -tră, -trum, pronom. adj. *our;* **nostrī**, *our men, our forces.*
nŏvem, indecl. num. adj. *nine.*
nŏvŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *new;* **rēs nŏvae**, *revolution;* **nŏvissĭmum agmĕn**, *the rear;* **nŏvissĭmī**, *the last, those on the rear.*
nox, noctĭs, f. *night.*
nūbo, -ĕrĕ, nupsī, nuptum, 3 v. a. *to wed*, said of the woman (lit. *to veil oneself*).
nūdŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *naked, bare, unprotected* by the shield **21** 24.
nullŭs, -ă, -um, gen. -īŭs, adj. *no, none.*
num, adv. of interrogation suggesting negative answer, *it is not, is it?*
nŭmĕrŭs, -ī, m. *a number.*
numquam, adv. *never.*
nunc, adv. *now.*
nuntĭo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to announce, to make known*
nuntĭŭs, -ī, m. *a messenger.*
nūpĕr, adv. *lately.*
nūtŭs, -ūs, m. *nod, sign of wish;* **ăd nūtum fĭĕrī**, *to be done according to some one's will.*

ŏb, prep. [acc.] *on account of.*
ŏbaerātŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *bound by debt, debtor.*
ōbĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 v. a. *to throw against, to put in the way of, to expose to.*
oblīviscŏr, -ī, oblītŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to forget.*
obsēcro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to beseech, to entreat.*
observo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to observe, to respect.*
obsĕs, -ĭdĭs, m. and f. *a hostage.*
obsigno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to seal up.*
obstringo, -ĕrĕ, -strinxī, -strictum, 3 v. a. *to bind, to put under obligation.*
obtĭnĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -tentum, 2 v. a. *to hold against, to retain, to maintain, to occupy.*
occāsŭs, -ūs, m. *setting* (of sun), *the West.*
occĭdo, -ĕrĕ, -cĭdī, -cāsum, 3 v. n. *to set, to fall.*
occīdo, -ĕrĕ, -cīdī, -cīsum, 3 v. a. *to kill.*
occulto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to hide, to conceal.*
occultŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *hidden;* **in occultō**, *secretly.*
occŭpo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to seize, to take prior possession of, to occupy.*
occurro, -ĕrĕ, -currī, -cursum, 3 v. n. *to go to meet, to confront.*
Ōcĕănŭs, -ī, m. *the* (*Atlantic*) *Ocean.*
Ocĕlum, -ī, n. *Ocelum*, a town of the Graioceli, *Oulx* in Piedmont.

octō, indecl. num. adj. *eight.*

octōdĕcim, indecl. num. adj. *eighteen.*

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj. *eighty.*

ŏcŭlŭs, -ī, m. *an eye.*

ōdī, -issĕ, ōsŭs, defect. v. only tenses of perfect stem, *to hate, to detest.*

offendo, -ĕrĕ, -fendī, -fensum, 3 v. a. *to knock against, to hurt, to offend.*

offensĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *offence, a giving offence.*

offĭcĭum, -ī, n. *duty, loyalty.*

omnīnō, adv. *altogether, in all, at all.*

omnĭs, -ĕ, adj. *all.*

ŏportĕt, -ērĕ, -ŭĭt, 2 impers. v. *it behoves, one ought.*

oppĭdum, -ī, n. *a town, a stronghold.*

opportūnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *convenient;* **opportūnissĭmŭs**, *most convenient.*

opprĭmo, -ĕrĕ, -pressī, -pressum, 3 v. a. *to crush, to oppress.*

oppugno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to attack, to lay siege to.*

[ops] **ŏpĭs**, f. *help* [nom. sing. is obsolete]; **ŏpēs**, -um, *wealth, resources, power.*

optĭmē, adv. *very well;* **optĭmē mĕrentēs**, *most deserving.*

optĭmŭs, -ă, -um, superl. adj. *best.*

ŏpŭs, ŏpĕrĭs, n. *a work; need, requirement;* **tantō ŏpĕrĕ**, *so greatly.*

ōrātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *speech, address.*

ordō, -ĭnĭs, m. *order, rank;* half of a maniple, which was commanded by a centurion: also called a **centuria.**

Orgĕtŏrix, -ĭgĭs, m. *Orgetorix*, a leading noble of the Helvetii.

ŏrĭŏr, -īrī, ortŭs sum, 4 dep. v. n. [with some forms of the 3rd conjugation, ŏrĕrĭs, ŏrĭtŭr, ŏrĕrĕr, ŏrĭtūrŭs], *to rise;* **sōl ŏrĭens**, *sunrise, the East.*

ornāmentum, -ī, n. *honour, distinction.*

ōro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. and n. *to speak, to pray.*

ostendo, -ĕrĕ, -tendī, -tentum, 3 v. a. *to point out, to show.*

P. for **Pūblĭŭs**, see **Consĭdĭŭs** and **Crassŭs.**

pābŭlātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *foraging.*

pābŭlum, -ī, n. *fodder, food for beasts.*

pāco, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to pacify, to subdue.*

paenĕ, adv. *almost.*

pāgŭs, -ī, m. *a canton, a district.*

pălūs, -ūdĭs, f. *a marsh.*

pando, -ĕrĕ, pandī, passum, 3 v. a. *to spread out;* **passīs mănĭbŭs**, *with outstretched hands.*

pār, părĭs, adj. *equal, alike;* **pār... atquĕ**, *the same as.*

părātŭs, -ă, -um, part. of **păro**, *prepared;* **părātĭŏr**, *better prepared;* **părātissĭmŭs**, *most fully prepared.*

pārĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, 2 v. n. *to appear, to obey.*

păro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to prepare.*

pars, -rtĭs, f. *a part, direction;* **magnā ex partĕ**, *in great part.*

parvŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *small, little.*

passŭs, -ūs, m. *a step, a pace* (as a measure of length nearly equal to 5 English feet); **millĕ passūs**, a Roman *mile* (about 144 yards short of an English mile).

pătĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, 2 v. n. *to lie open, to extend;* **lŏcī pătentēs**, *open country.*

pătĕr, -trĭs, m. *a father.*
pătĭŏr, pătī, passŭs sum, 3 v. a. *to suffer, to endure, to allow.*
paucŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *few.*
paulātim, adv. *gradually, little by little.*
paulum, adv. *a little;* **paulō**, *by a little.*
pax, pācĭs, f. *peace.*
pecco, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to err, to sin.*
pĕdĕs, -ĭtĭs, m. *foot-soldier.*
pēiŭs, comp. adv. *worse, more unfortunately;* see **mălĕ**.
pello, -ĕrĕ, pĕpŭlī, pulsum, 3 v. a. *to drive away, to strike, to defeat.*
pendo, -ĕrĕ, pĕpendī, pensum, 3 v. a. *to pay.*
pĕr, prep. [acc.] *through, throughout, by means of, owing to;* **pĕr vim**, *forcibly;* **pĕr sē**, *so far as he was concerned;* **pĕr fĭdem**, *in breach of faith;* **pĕr insĭdĭas**, *treacherously.*
percontātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a questioning.*
perdūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to lead through, to complete.*
pĕrĕo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ĭtum, 4 v. n. *to perish.*
perfăcĭlĭs, -ĕ, adj. *very easy.*
perfĕro, -ferrĕ, -tŭlī, -lātum, irreg. v. a. *to endure, to carry through, to spread abroad.*
perfĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 v. a. *to complete, to make, to secure.*
perfringo, -ĕrĕ, -frēgī, -fractum, 3 v. a. *to break through.*
perfŭgă, -ae, f. *a deserter.*
perfŭgĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fūgī, -fŭgĭtum, 3 v. n. *to escape.*
pĕrīcŭlōsŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *dangerous.*
pĕrīcŭlum, -ī, n. *a danger;* **făcĕrĕ pĕrīcŭlum**, *to test.*
pĕrītŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *experienced, skilled;* **pĕrītissĭmŭs**, *most skilful in* (with gen.).
permănĕo, -ērĕ, -mansī, -mansum, 2 v. n. *to remain.*
permitto, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. *to allow.*
permŏvĕo, -ērĕ, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 v. a. *to move deeply, to influence.*
pernĭcĭēs, -ēī, f. *destruction, ruin.*
perpaucŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *very few.*
perpĕtŭō, adv. *perpetually, for ever.*
perpĕtŭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *lasting, unbroken.*
perrumpo, -ĕrĕ, -rūpī, -ruptum, 3 v. a. and n. *to burst through.*
persĕquŏr, -ī, -sĕcūtŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to pursue.*
persĕvēro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to persist.*
persolvo, -ĕrĕ, -solvī, -sŏlūtum, 3 v. a. *to pay in full.*
perspĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -spexī, -spectum, 3 v. a. *to see, to perceive.*
persuādĕo, -ērĕ, -suāsī, -suāsum, 2 v. a. *to persuade.*
perterrĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. a. *to terrify, to frighten thoroughly.*
pertĭnācĭă, -ae, f. *obstinacy.*
pertĭnĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, 2 v. n. *to extend, to tend; to have to do with;* **ĕōdem pertĭnērĕ**, *to tend in the same direction.*
perturbo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to disturb, to alarm.*
pervĕnĭo, -īrĕ, -vēnī, -ventum, 4 v. n. *to arrive.*
pēs, pĕdĭs, m. *a foot;* **pĕdem rĕferrĕ**, *to retire.* As a measure of length, *a foot* equal to ·97 of an English foot, or 11·64 inches.
pĕto, -ĕrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 3 v. a. *to seek, to make for, to ask.*

phălanx, -angĭs, f. *a phalanx, troops in a solid mass.*

pīlum, -ī, n. *a javelin;* the Roman *pilum* was a heavy javelin four feet long with iron head, generally thrown before making a charge.

Pīsō, -ōnĭs, m. (1) *L. Calpurnius Piso*, consul B.C. 112, killed B.C. 107, (2) *L. Calpurnius Piso*, consul B.C. 58, (3) *M. Pupius Piso*, consul B.C. 61.

plăcĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. a. *to please;* impers. **plăcēt**, *it is resolved, it pleases.*

plānĭtĭēs, -ēī, f. *flat ground, a plain.*

plebs, plēbĭs, f. *the common people, the populace.*

plērumquĕ, adv. *generally, for the most part.*

plūs, adv. *more;* **plūs**, plūrĭs, in sing. a subst. n. *more;* in pl. subst. and adj.; **plūrēs**, plūră, plūrĭum, plūrĭbŭs, *more, several;* **plūrĭmum**, adv. *most.*

poenă, -ae, f. *punishment, penalty.*

pollĭcĕŏr, -ērī, -ĭtŭs sum, 2 dep. v. a. *to promise.*

pōno, -ĕrĕ, pŏsŭī, pŏsĭtum, 3 v. a. *to place, to lay down;* **castră pōnĕrĕ**, *to pitch a camp;* **custōdēs pōnĕrĕ**, *to set guards.*

pons, -ntĭs, m. *a bridge.*

pŏpŭlātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a plundering, a devastation.*

pŏpŭlŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to plunder, to devastate.*

pŏpŭlŭs, -ī, m. *a people;* **pŏpŭlŭs Rōmānŭs**, *the Roman people* (official designation of the Roman State).

porto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to carry, to bring.*

portōrĭum, -ī, n. *duty, impost* on imported goods.

posco, -ĕrĕ, pŏposcī, 3 v. a. *to demand.*

possessĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *possession, occupation* of a country.

possĭdĕo, -ērĕ, -sēdī, -sessum, 2 v. a. *to hold, to possess.*

possum, possĕ, pŏtŭī, irreg. v. n. *to be able;* **plūrĭmum possĕ**, *to have very great power.*

post, prep. [acc.] *behind, after;* adv. *afterwards.*

postĕā, adv. *afterwards.*

postĕāquam, conj. *after, when.*

postĕrŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *the next, subsequent;* **postĕrĭŏr**, *later;* **postrēmŭs**, *last.*

postquam, conj. *when, after.*

postrīdĭē, adv. *next day.* It is compounded of **postĕrī** locative of **postĕrŭs** and **dĭē**, but the derivation being neglected or forgotten we have **postrīdĭē ĕiŭs dĭēī**, *the day after that day.*

postŭlātum, -ī. n. *demand.*

postŭlo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to ask, to demand.*

pŏtens, -ntĭs, adj. *powerful;* **pŏtentĭŏr**, *more powerful;* **pŏtentissĭmŭs**, *most powerful.*

pŏtentātŭs, -ūs, m. *power, political supremacy.*

pŏtentĭă, -ae, f. *power, great influence.*

pŏtestās, -ātĭs, f. *power, authority, official power;* **sŭī pŏtestātem făcĕrĕ**, *to give an opportunity of being attacked.*

pŏtĭŏr, -īrī, pŏtītŭs sum, 4 dep. v. a. *to obtain, to gain possession of.*

pŏtĭŭs, adv. *rather.*

praecăvĕo, -ērĕ, -cāvī, -cautum, 2 v. n. *to take precautions.*

praecēdo, -ĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessum, 3 v. n. and a. *to go before, to precede, to excel.*

praecĭpĭo, -ĕrĕ, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 v. a. *to instruct.*

praecĭpŭē, adv. *specially.*

praedĭco, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to give out, to say.*

praefectŭs, -ī, m. *an officer of cavalry,* also *officer on a proconsul's staff.*

praefĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 v. a. *to put at the head of, to put in command of;* **praefectŭs**, *in command.*

praemitto, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. *to send on in front, to send before.*

praemĭum, -ī, n. *reward.*

praeopto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to wish rather, to prefer, to choose in preference.*

praepōno, -ĕrĕ -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, 3 v. a. *to put at the head.*

praescrībo, -ĕrĕ, -scripsī, -scriptum, 3 v. a. *to lay down the law, to prescribe.*

praescriptum, -ī, n. *order, condition.*

praesens, -ntĭs, adj. (part. of **praesum**) *present;* **in praesentĭā** (sc. **tempŏrā**) *for the present, at the time* [others explain **praesentĭā** in this phrase as ablative singular of **praesentĭā**, *presence*].

praesertim, adv. *especially;* **praesertim cum**, *especially as, and that though.*

praesĭdĭum, -ī, n. *a guard, a garrison, protection.*

praesto, -ārĕ, -stĭtī, -stātum or -stĭtum, (1) 1 v. n. *to stand at the head of, to excel;* (2) v. a. *to afford, to furnish;* impers. **praestăt**, -ārĕ, *it is better.*

praesum, -essĕ, -fŭī, irreg. v. n. *to be in front, to be at the head of.*

praetĕr, prep. [acc.] *past, beyond; besides, except.*

praetĕrĕā, adv. *besides.*

praetĕrĕo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ĭtum, 4 v. a. and n. *to pass over, to pass away;* **praetĕrĭtă**, *the past.*

praeterquam, adv. *except.*

praetŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *a leader; a praetor,* a Roman magistrate next in dignity to the consul, who did the judicial business at Rome or governed certain provinces. **lēgātŭs prō praetōrĕ**, *a legate with the authority of a praetor.*

praetōrĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *belonging to the commander;* **cŏhors praetōrĭă**, *a commander's body-guard.*

prĕmo, -ĕrĕ, pressī, pressum, 3 v. a. *to press.*

prendo (**prĕhendo**), -ĕrĕ, -ndī, -nsum, 3 v. a. *to lay hold of.*

prĕtĭum, -ī, n. *a price.*

[**prex**, prĕcĭs] **prĕcĕ**, f. *a prayer.* The nom. and gen. are not in general use; and of more common occurrence is the pl. **prĕcēs**, -um, *prayers.*

prīdĭē, adv. *the day before;* **prīdĭē ĕiŭs dĭēī**, *on the previous day.*

prīmō, adv. *firstly, in the first instance.*

prīmum, adv. *first, at first;* **quam prīmum**, *as soon as possible.*

prīmŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *first* [prae].

princeps, -cĭpĭs, adj. *foremost, first* **6** 15, **11** 6; subst. m. *a chief.*

principātŭs, -ūs, m. *the foremost position, the lead.*

pristĭnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *former, of old times.*

prĭŭs, adv. *before;* **prius quam**, *before.*

prīvātim, adv. *privately, in a private capacity.*

prīvātŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *private.*

prō, prep. [abl.] *for, in proportion to* **3** 2; *before, in front of, instead of;* **prō vallō**, *instead of a fortification;* **prō vīsō**, *as having been seen;* **prō scĕlĕrĕ**, *in a manner suitable to the crime;* **prō sŭīs bĕnĕfĭcĭīs**, *considering his kindnesses;* **prō hostĭum nŭmĕrō**, *in view of the number of the enemy.*

prŏbo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to approve, to prove.*

prōcēdo, -ĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessum, 3 v. n. *to proceed, to advance.*

Prōcillŭs, -ī, m. *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, a Gaul, whose father C. Valerius Caburus on his manumission had taken the Roman names of his patron C. Valerius Flaccus.

prōcurro, -ĕrĕ, -currī, -cursum, 3 v. n. *to rush forward.*

prōdĕo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ĭtum, 4 v. n. *to go forward.*

prōdo, -ĕrĕ, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, 3 v. a. *to give forth, to hand on;* **mĕmŏrĭam prōdĕrĕ**, *to hand down the record.*

prōdūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to bring out, to produce.*

proelĭum, -ī, n. *a battle.*

prōfectĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a setting out, a start.*

prōfĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectum, 3 v. a. *to accomplish, to make way.*

prŏfĭciscŏr, -ī, prŏfectŭs sum, 3 dep. v. n. *to start, to set off.*

prōfŭgĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fūgī, -fŭgĭtum, 3 v. n. *to fly, to escape.*

prōgrĕdĭŏr, -ī, -gressŭs sum, 3 dep. v. n. *to advance.*

prŏhĭbĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -ĭtum, 2 v. a. *to keep off, to repel, to prevent.*

prōĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 v. a. *to throw forward, to cast away.*

prōmŏvĕo, -ērĕ, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 v. a. *to move forward, to push forward.*

prŏpĕ, adv. *near;* **prŏpĭŭs**, *nearer;* prep. [acc.] *near, close to.*

prōpello, -ĕrĕ, -pŭlī, -pulsum, 3 v. a. *to repulse, to repel.*

prŏpinquŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *near, close to; related to;* as subst. **prŏpinquās sŭās nuptum collŏcārĕ**, *to give his female relatives in marriage.*

prōpōno, -ĕrĕ, -pŏsŭī, -pŏsĭtum, 3 v. a. *to put forward, to put in the way of.*

proptĕr, prep. [acc.] *on account of.*

proptĕrĕā, adv. *on that account;* **proptĕrĕā quŏd**, *because, inasmuch as.*

prōpulso, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to repel.*

prospĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -spexī, -spectum, 3 v. a. *to look forward, to survey, to look after, to provide for.*

prōvincĭă, -ae, f. *a province*, any sphere of duty of a Roman magistrate. In special sense, *a province*, a country subject to Rome. In Transalpine Gaul, the *Province* was the south-eastern district (mod. *Provence*) first made a province in B.C. 120–118, **1** 8.

proxĭmē, adv. *next, most recently*, superl. of **prŏpĕ**.
proxĭmŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *next, nearest, last*, superl. adj. formed from **prŏpĕ**, **prŏpĭŏr**; followed by accusative **47** 10.
pūblĭcē, adv. *publicly, at the public expense, in behalf of the state.*
pūblĭcŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *public, of the people*; **rēs pūblĭcă**, *public business, the commonwealth.*
pŭdŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *shame.*
pŭĕr, -ĕrī, m. a *boy, a child.*
pugnă, -ae, f. *a battle.*
pugno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to fight*; impers. **pugnātum est**, *the battle was fought.*
Pūpĭŭs, -ī, m. see **Pīsō**.
purgo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to cleanse, to clear the character, of to excuse.*
pŭto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to think, to suppose.*
Pȳrēnaeŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *Pyrenean*; **Pȳrēnaeī**, sc. **montes**, *the Pyrenees.*

Q. for **Quintŭs**, see **Făbĭŭs**.
quā, adv. *by which way, where.*
quādrāgintā, indecl. num. adj. *forty.*
quādringentī, -ae, -ă, num. adj. *four hundred.*
quaero, -ĕrĕ, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3 v. a. *to seek, to enquire, to ask.*
quaestŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *a quaestor*, a Roman magistrate.
quālĭs, -ĕ, adj. *of what sort.*
quam, adv. and conj. (1) *how*, (2) *as, than*; **quam diū**, *so long as.* With superlatives, **quam maxĭmŭs**, *as great as possible*; **quam maturrĭmē**, *as promptly as possible*; **quam cĕlerrĭmē**, *as quickly as possible*; **quam ămīcissĭmum**, *as friendly as possible.*
quamobrem, adv. *wherefore.*
quantŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *how great.*
quārē, adv. *wherefore, on which account, why.*
quartŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *fourth.*
quattŭŏr, indecl. num. adj. *four.*
quattŭordĕcim, indecl. num. adj. *fourteen.*
-quĕ, enclitic conj. always joined to another word, *and.*
quemadmŏdum, adv. *as, in what manner.*
quĕrŏr, -ī, questŭs sum, 3 dep. v. n. and a. *to complain, to complain of.*
quī, quae, quŏd, gen. cŭiŭs, rel. pron. *who, which*; as an adj. interrogative *what?* **quō**, *in proportion as*, answering to **ĕō**. **quō mĭnŭs mĕrĭtō P. R. accĭdissent**, *in proportion as these things had not befallen them from any demerit of the Roman people.*
quīcumquĕ, quaecumquĕ, quodcumquĕ, rel. pron. *whosoever, whatsoever.*
quĭd, adv. *why?*
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, indef. pron. *a certain one.*
quĭdem, adv. *indeed*, emphasizing the word which it follows. **nē ...quĭdem**, *not even, not either*, the word qualified being placed between them.
quīn (**quī** abl. **ne**), conj. *how not?* **quīn ĕtĭam**, *nay more:* after negative words of hindrance and doubt, *but that*, **nōn dŭbĭtārĕ quīn supplĭcĭum sūmăt**, *to have no doubt of punishing*; **nĕquĕ ăbest suspīcĭō quīn**, *nor is there wanting a suspicion that.*
quindĕcim, indecl. num. adj. *fifteen.*

quingentī, -ae, -ă, num. adj. *five hundred.*
quīnī, -ae, -ă, distrib. num. adj. *five each, five at a time;* used for cardinal number with nouns that have no singular, *five* **14** 3.
quinquāgintā, indecl. num. adj. *fifty.*
quinquĕ, indecl. num. adj. *five.*
quintŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *fifth.*
quĭs, quă, quĭd, interrog. pron. *who?* indef. pron. *any;* **sī quĭd**, *if anything;* **nē quĭs**, *that no one;* **nĭsĭ quĭd**, *unless some.*
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, gen. cūiusquam, indef. pron. in neg. or interrog. sentences, *any, any one* **34** 15.
quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quidquĕ, gen. cūiusquĕ, indef. pron. *each, each one.*
quō, adv. *whither; in order that, whereby;* **sī quō**, *if to any place.*
quŏd, conj. *because, in that;* **proptĕrĕā quŏd**, *seeing that, because;* **quŏd sī**, *but if.*
quōmĭnŭs, conj. *whereby the less, that not.*
quŏnĭam, conj. *since.*
quŏquĕ, conj. *also.*
quŏtannīs, adv. *yearly.*
quŏtĭens, adv. *how often.*

rādix, -īcĭs, f. *root, foot of a mountain.*
răpīnă, -ae, f. *plunder.*
rătĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *reckoning, plan, strategy, calculation, account;* **rătĭōnem confĭcĕrĕ**, *to make up an account;* **rătĭōnem hăbērĕ**, *to take into account;* **ălĭā rătĭōnĕ**, *otherwise.*
rătĭs, -ĭs, f. *a raft.*
Raurĭcī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Raurici*, a tribe on the upper Rhine.
rĕcens, -ntĭs, adj. *fresh, new.*
rĕcĭpĭo, -ĕrĕ, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 v. a. *to receive, to recover, to take back, to retire;* **sē rĕcĭpĕrĕ**, *to betake oneself, to retire.*
rĕcūso, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to refuse.*
rēdă, -ae, f. *a car.*
reddo, -ĕrĕ, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, 3 v. a. *to give back.*
rĕdĕo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ĭtum, 4 v. n. *to return.*
rĕdĭgo, -ĕrĕ, -ēgī, -actum, 3 v. a. *to reduce* **41** 8.
rĕdĭmo, -ĕrĕ, -ēmī, -emptum, 3 v. a. *to buy back, to redeem; to buy up* **16** 5.
rĕdintēgro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to renew.*
rĕdĭtĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *a returning.*
rĕdūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to bring back.*
rĕfĕro, -ferrĕ, rĕtŭlī (or rett-), -lātum, irreg. v. a. *to carry back, to report;* **pĕdem rĕferrĕ**, *to retire;* **grātĭam rĕferrĕ**, *to shew gratitude, to make a return.*
rĕgĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *region, district.*
regnum, -ī, n. *a kingdom, royal power.*
rēĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 v. a. *to throw aside, to throw back.*
rĕlinquo, -ĕrĕ, -līquī, -lictum, 3 v. a. *to leave, to leave behind, to abandon.*
rĕlĭquŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *left, remaining.*
rĕmănĕo, -ērĕ, -mansī, -mansum, 2 v. n. *to remain.*
rĕmĭniscŏr, -ī, 3 dep. v. a. *to remember.*

rĕmitto, -ĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missum, 3 v. a. *to send back, to remit.*
rĕmŏvĕo, -ērĕ, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 v. a. *to remove, to put out of the way.*
rĕmūnĕrŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to repay.*
rĕnuntĭo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to bring back word, to announce.*
rĕpello, -ĕrĕ, rĕpŭlī (or repp-), -pulsum, 3 v. a. *to drive back, to repel.*
rĕpentĕ, adv. *suddenly.*
rĕpentīnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *sudden.*
rĕpĕrĭo, -īrĕ, rĕpĕrī (or repp-), rĕpertum, 4 v. a. *to find out, to discover.*
rĕpĕto, -ĕrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ītum, 3 v. a. *to seek, to exact, to demand back.*
rēpraesento, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to realize, to do at once.*
rĕprĕhendo, -ĕrĕ, -ndī, -nsum, 3 v. a. *to drag back, to seize hold of, to find fault with.*
rĕpŭdĭo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to reject.*
rĕpugno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to fight against, to resist, to oppose.*
rēs, rĕī, f. *a thing, business, affair;* **quam ŏb rem**, *on which account, wherefore;* **rem gĕrĕrĕ**, *to carry on a campaign;* **rēs pūblĭcă**, *the republic, public business;* **rēs fămĭlĭārĭs**, *property;* **rēs mīlĭtārĭs**, *warfare;* **rēs frūmentārĭă**, *supply of corn;* **nŏvae rēs**, *revolution.*
rescindo, -ĕrĕ, -scĭdī, -scissum, 3 v. a. *to cut away;* **pontem rescindĕrĕ**, *to break down a bridge.*
rescisco, -ĕrĕ, -scīvī or -scĭī, -scītum, 3 v. a. *to ascertain, to learn.*
rescrībo, -ĕrĕ, -scripsī, -scriptum, 3 v. a. *to put on the list, to enrol* **37** 26.
rĕservo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to reserve.*
rĕsisto, -ĕrĕ, -stĭtī, -stĭtum, 3 v. n. *to make a stand, resist.*
respondĕo, -ērĕ, -spondī, -sponsum, 2 v. n. *to answer.*
responsum, -ī, n. *an answer.*
respublĭcă, rēīpublĭcae, f. *the Republic.*
respŭo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, 3 v. a. *to reject.*
restĭtŭo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -ūtum, 3 v. a. *to restore, to replace.*
rĕtĭnĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -tentum, 2 v. a. *to hold back.*
rĕvello, -ĕrĕ, -vulsī, 3 v. a. *to tear away.*
rĕverto, -ĕrĕ, -vertī, -versum, 3 v. n. *to return;* also **rĕvertŏr**, -ī, -versŭs sum, 3 dep. v. n. *to return.*
rex, rēgĭs, m. *a king.*
Rhēnŭs, -ī, m. *the Rhine.*
Rhŏdănŭs, -ī, m. *the Rhone.*
rīpă, -ae, f. *a bank.*
rŏgo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to ask, to ask for.*
Rōmă, -ae, f. *Rome.*
Rōmānŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *Roman.*
rŏtă, -ae, f. *a wheel.*
rursŭs, adv. *again.*
Rutēnī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Ruteni,* a Gallic tribe.

saepĕ, adv. *often;* **saepĭŭs**, *oftener, again and again;* **saepissĭmē**, *very often.*
saepĕnŭmĕrō, adv. *many times.*
sălūs, -ūtĭs, f. *health, safety.*
sancĭo, -īrĕ, sanxī, sanctum, 4 v. a. *to affirm solemnly, to ordain.*

sānĭtās, -ātĭs, f. *sound mind, health.*

Santŏnēs, -um [or -ī, -ōrum], m. pl. *the Santones*, a tribe living between the Loire and the Garonne.

sarcĭnă, -ae, f. *a pack, a bundle.*

sătĭs, adv. *enough, sufficiently;* with gen. **sătĭs causae**, *enough reason;* **sătĭs hăbērĕ**, *to be satisfied;* **sătĭs grandĭs**, *fairly great.*

sătisfăcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, -factum, 3 v. n. *to do enough for, to satisfy, to make amends to.*

sătisfactĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *apology, amends.*

scĕlŭs, -ĕrĭs, n. *a crime, wickedness.*

scĭentĭă, -ae, f. *knowledge.*

scĭo, -īrĕ, scīvī or scĭī, scītum, 4 v. a. *to know.*

scūtum, -ī, n. *a shield.*

sē, sŭī, sĭbī, reflex. pron. *himself, herself, themselves.*

sēcĭŭs, adv. *otherwise, the less.*

sēcrētō, adv. *privately, secretly.*

sĕcundum, prep. [acc.] *in accordance with, following.*

sĕcundŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *second; properous;* **rēs sĕcundĭōrēs**, *greater success.*

sĕd, conj. *but.*

sēdĕcim, indecl. num. adj. *sixteen.*

sēdēs, -ĭs, f. *a seat, a place of residence, country.*

sēdĭtĭōsŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *seditious, factious.*

Sedusĭī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Sedusii*, a German tribe.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Segusiavi*, a tribe living near Lyons.

sĕmĕl, adv. *once.*

sēmentĭs, -ĭs, f. *sowing.*

sempĕr, adv. *always.*

sĕnātŭs, -ūs, m. *the Senate;* **sĕnātūsconsultă**, *decrees of the Senate.*

sĕnex, sĕnĭs, m. *an old man.*

sēnī, -ae, -ă, distrib. num. adj. *six each, six at a time; six*, see **quīnī**.

sententĭă, -ae, f. *opinion.*

sentĭo, -īrĕ, sensī, sensum, 4 v. a. *to feel, to think, to perceive.*

sēpărātim, adv. *separately.*

septentrĭō, -ōnĭs, m. *the North;* more often pl. **Septentrĭōnēs**, -um, the seven plough-oxen or stars of the Great Bear; **ăd septentrĭōnēs**, *northward* 2 7 but sing. I. 10.

septĭmŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *seventh.*

sĕpultūră, -ae, f. *burial.*

Sēquănă, -ae, m. *the river Seine.*

Sēquănī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Sequani*, a tribe on the Rhone near Maçon.

Sēquănŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *Sequanian.*

sĕquŏr, -ī, sĕcūtŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to follow, to accompany.*

servīlĭs, -ĕ, adj. *servile, of slaves.*

servĭtūs, -ūtĭs, f. *slavery.*

servŭs, -ī, m. *a slave.*

sēsē, reflex. pron. *himself, herself, themselves*, reduplicated form of sē.

seu, conj. *whether*, see **sīvĕ**.

sex, indecl. num. adj. *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj. *sixty.*

sexcentī, -ae, -ă, num. adj. *six hundred.*

sī, conj. *if, whether.*

sīc, adv. *so.*

sīcŭt, adv. *just as.*

signum, -ī, n. *a signal; a standard;* **signă convertĕrĕ**, *to wheel round;* **inferrĕ signă**, *to charge;* **signă ferrĕ**, *to advance.*

silvă, -ae, f. *a forest, a wood.*

sĭmŭl, adv. *at the same time.*

sĭmŭlātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *pretence, feigning;* **sĭmŭlātĭō rēī frūmentārĭae**, *a pretended anxiety about the supply of corn.*

sĭmŭlo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to feign.*

sīn, conj. *but if* [sī-nĕ].

sĭnĕ, prep. [abl.] *without.*

singŭlī, -ae, -ă, adj. *one at a time, one by one, each separately.*

sĭnistĕr, -tră, -trum, adj. *left.*

sĭnistră, -ae, f. *the left hand.*

sīvĕ, **seu**, conj. *whether, or, or if.*

sŏcĕr, -ĕrī, m. *a father-in-law.*

sŏcĭŭs, -ī, m. *an ally, a companion.*

sōl, sōlĭs, m. *the Sun.*

sōlum, adv. *only.*

sŏlum, -ī, n. *the ground, the soil.*

sōlŭs, -ă, -um, gen. -īŭs, adj. *alone.*

sŏrŏr, -ōrĭs, f. *a sister;* **sŏrŏr ex mātrĕ**, *a uterine sister, a half-sister.*

sors, -rtĭs, f. *a lot, fortune told by lots, prophecy.*

spătĭum, -ī, n. *a space* of distance or time, *interval, distance.*

spĕcĭēs, -ēī, f. *show, appearance.*

specto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to look at, to look towards.*

spĕcŭlŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 v. n. *to spy.*

spēro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to hope, to expect.*

spēs, -ēī, f. *hope, expectation;* **in spem vĕnīrĕ**, *to hope.*

spīrĭtŭs, -ūs, m. *breath, spirit;* pl. **spīrĭtūs**, *pride, presumption.*

spontĕ, adv. *voluntarily, of one's own accord* [properly abl. of defective noun (see **8** 3), of which also the gen. **spontis** is used in poetry].

stătim, adv. *at once.*

stătŭo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -ūtum, 3 v. a. *to set up, to settle, to resolve upon, to adopt a measure.*

stīpendĭārĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *liable to impost, paying tribute.*

stīpendĭum, -ī, n. *payment, tribute.*

stŭdĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, 2 v. n. *to be eager for, to be devoted to.*

stŭdĭum, -ī, n. *zeal, eagerness.*

sŭb, prep. [acc. and abl.] *under, close up to* **21** 11; of time, *just before;* **sŭb montĕ**, *at the foot of a mountain.*

subdūco, -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to lead up from below.*

sŭbĕo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ĭtum, 4 v. n. *to go under, to enter; to undergo, to come up.*

sŭbĭtō, adv. *suddenly.*

sūbĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -iēcī, -iectum, 3 v. a. *to throw from below* **22** 19.

sublĕvo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to lighten, to raise, to relieve, to assist.*

submĭnistro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to supply.*

submŏvĕo, -ērĕ, -mōvī, -mōtum, 2 v. a. *to drive off, to dislodge.*

subsĭdĭum, -ī, n. *assistance.*

subsisto, -ĕrĕ, -stĭtī, 3 v. n. *to halt.*

subsum, -essĕ, no perf., irreg. v. n. *to be near at hand.*

subtrăho, -ĕrĕ, -traxī, -tractum, 3 v. a. *to withdraw.*

subvĕho, -ĕre, -vexī, -vectum, 3 v. a. *to carry up.*

succēdo, -ĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessum, 3 v. n. *to come up, to take the place of.*

Suēbī or **Suēvī**, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Suevi*, a large German tribe, whence mod. *Swabia.*

Suebŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *Suevan, of the Suevi.*

Sullă, -ae, m. *L. Cornelius Sulla*, dictator B.C. 82–79.

sum, essĕ, fŭī, irreg. v. n. *to be.*

summă, -ae, f. *the sum, the total, the upshot;* **summă bellī**, *the main conduct of the war.*

summŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *highest, chief, extreme;* **summŭs mons**, *the top of the mountain.*

sūmo, -ĕrĕ, sumpsī, sumptum, 3 v. a. *to take, to get;* **sūmĕrĕ supplĭcĭum**, *to exact punishment.*

sumptŭs, -ūs, m. *expense.*

sŭperbē, adv. *proudly, haughtily.*

sŭpĕro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to surpass, to overcome.*

supersum, -essĕ, -fŭī, irreg. v. n. *to survive, to remain.*

sŭpĕrŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *higher, above;* **sŭpĕrĭŏr**, -ĭŭs, gen. -ōrĭs, *higher, loftier;* **lŏcī sŭpĕrĭōrēs**, *high ground;* **sŭprēmŭs**, **summŭs**, *supreme, highest, last.*

suppĕto, -ĕrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -pĕtītum, 3 v. n. *to be on hand, to be supplied.*

supplĭcĭtĕr, adv. *suppliantly, like suppliants.*

supplĭcium, -ī, n. *punishment;* **supplĭcĭō affĭcī**, *to be punished.*

supporto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to bring up.*

suscĭpĭo, -ĕrĕ, -cēpī, -ceptum, 3 v. a. *to undertake, to engage in.*

suspīcĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *suspicion.*

suspĭcĭo, -ĕrĕ, -spexī, -spectum, 3 v. a. *to look askance at, to suspect.*

suspīcŏr, ārī, -ātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. a. *to suspect.*

sustĭnĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, -tentum, 2 v. a. *to hold up, to endure, to resist;* **impĕtum sustĭnērĕ**, *to stand a charge.*

sŭŭs, -ă, -um, reflex. poss. pron. *his own, her own, their own.*

T. for **Tĭtŭs**, see **Lăbĭēnŭs**.

tăbernācŭlum, -ī, n. *a tent.*

tăbŭlă, -ae, f. *a tablet, a document.*

tăcĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, tăcĭtum, 2 v. n. *to be silent, to say nothing of.*

tăcĭtŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *silent.*

tam, adv. *so, so much.*

tămĕn, conj. *yet, nevertheless, but.*

tămetsī, conj. *although.*

tandem, adv. *at length;* in emphatic questions, **quid tandem**, *what in the world?*

tantōpĕrĕ, adv. *so greatly.*

tantŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *so great;* **tantī est**, *is of such value.*

tectum, -ī, n. *a roof.*

tēlum, -ī, n. *a weapon, a missile.*

tĕmĕrārĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *rash, headstrong.*

tĕmĕrĕ, adv. *rashly, causelessly.*

tempĕrantĭă, -ae, f. *self-control, prudence.*

tempĕro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to temper, to control; to refrain;* followed by **ab** and ablative **6** 23, by **quin 29** 15.

tempto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to try, to attempt.*

tempŭs, -ŏrĭs, n. *time;* **tam nĕcessārĭō tempŏrĕ**, *at so critical a time.*

tĕnĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, tentum, 2 v. a. *to hold, to possess;* **mĕmŏrĭā tĕnērĕ**, *to remember.*

tĕr, adv. *thrice.*

tergum, -ī, n. *a back;* **tergă vertĕrĕ**, *to run away.*

terră, -ae, f. *land, the earth.*

terrēnŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *of earth.*

tertĭŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *third.*

testāmentum, -ī, n. *a will.*

testĭmōnĭum, -ī, n. *evidence.*

testĭs, -ĭs, m. and f. *a witness.*

Teutŏnī -ōrum [or **-ēs**, -um], m. pl. *the Teutons*, a tribe of N. Germany.

Tigŭrīnī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Tigurini*, a canton of the Helvetii (*Zürich*). **Tigŭrīnŭs**, -ă, -um, adj.

tĭmĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, 2 v. a. and n. *to fear, to be afraid.*

tĭmĭdŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *fearful, timid.*

tĭmŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *fear.*

Tītŭs, -ī, m. see **Lăbĭēnŭs.**

tŏlĕro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to endure, to bear;* **fămem tŏlĕrārĕ**, *to keep off starvation.*

tollo, -ĕrĕ, sustŭlī, sublātum, 3 v. a. *to raise, to carry, to remove, to do away with;* **sublātŭs**, *elated* **13** 19.

Tolōsātēs, -um, m. pl. *the Tolosates*, people of Tolosa (*Toulouse*).

tŏt, indecl. adj. *so many.*

tŏtĭdem, indecl. adj. *so many, the same number.*

tōtŭs, -ă, -um, gen. -īŭs, adj. *whole, the whole, all.*

trādo, -ĕrĕ, -dĭdī, -dĭtum, 3 v. a. *to hand over, to give up.*

trādūco [trans-], -ĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductum, 3 v. a. *to lead across.*

trāgŭlă, -ae, f. *a javelin*, used by the Gauls.

trăho, -ĕrĕ, traxī, tractum, 3 v. a. *to drag.*

trāno, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to swim across.*

trans, prep. [acc.] *across, over.*

transĕo, -īrĕ, -īvī or -ĭī, -ĭtum, 4 v. a. *to cross, to go across, to pass over.*

transfīgo, -ĕrĕ, -fixī, -fixum, 3 v. a. *to pierce, to transfix.*

transporto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to carry across.*

trĕcentī, -ae, -ă, num. adj. *three hundred.*

trēdĕcim, indecl. num. adj. *thirteen.*

trēs, trĭă, gen. trĭum, num. adj. *three.*

Trēvĕrī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Treveri*, a large Gallic tribe (mod. *Trèves*).

Tribŏcēs, -um, m. pl. *the Triboces*, a German tribe.

trĭbūnŭs, -ī, m. *a tribune;* **trĭbūnī mīlĭtum**, *military tribunes.* There were six in a legion.

trĭbŭo, -ĕrĕ, -ŭī, -ūtum, 3 v. a. *to grant, to assign to.*

trīdŭum, -ī, n. *a space of three days.*

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj. *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -ă, adj. *three each, three.*

trĭplex, -ĭcĭs, adj. *three-fold;* **ăcĭēs trĭplex**, *an army in three lines.*

tristĭs, -ĕ, adj. *sad, gloomy.*

tristĭtĭă, -ae, f. *sadness, gloom.*

Tūlingī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Tulingi*, a Gallic tribe.

tum, adv. *then.*

tŭmultŭs, -ūs, m. *outbreak, disturbance.*

tŭmŭlŭs, -ī, m. *a hill.*

turpĭs, -ĕ, adj. *disgraceful;* **turpissĭmŭs**, *most disgraceful.*

ŭbĭ, adv. *where; when.*

Ubĭī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Ubii*, a German tribe.

ulciscŏr, -ī, ultŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to avenge.*

ullŭs, -ă, -um, gen. ullĭŭs, adj. *any, any one, a single* (with negatives).

ultĕrĭŏr, **-ŭs**, gen. -ōrĭs, adj. *farther, farther off;* **ultĭmŭs**, *farthest, last.*
ultrā, prep. [acc.] *beyond.*
ultrō, adv. *spontaneously; beyond.*
umquam, adv. *ever.*
ūnā, adv. *together with, at the same time with.*
undĕ, adv. *whence, from which.*
undĭquĕ, adv. *on every side, from all quarters.*
ūnŭs, -ă, -um, gen. ūnĭŭs, num. adj. *one;* in pl. *alone, only.*
urbs, urbĭs, f. *a city; the City* (Rome).
usquĕ, adv. *still, right up, even.*
ūsŭs, -ūs, m. *use, experience;* **ex ūsū**, *profitably, to the advantage of.*
ŭt, conj. *in order that, that, so that;* adv. *as, as though, when; how* **42** 1.
ŭtĕr, ŭtră, ŭtrum, gen. ŭtrĭŭs, adj. *which of two, whether of two.*
ŭterquĕ, ŭtrăquĕ, ŭtrumquĕ, adj. *both.*
ŭtī for **ŭt**.
ūtŏr, -ī, ūsŭs sum, 3 dep. v. a. *to use, to employ, to practise, to enjoy.*
ŭtrimquĕ, adv. *on both sides.*
ŭtrum, adv. *whether;* see **ăn**.
uxŏr, -ōrĭs, f. *a wife.*

V, see **quintŭs**.
văco, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. n. *to be vacant, to be free from.*
vădum, -ī, n. *a ford.*
văgŏr, -ārī, văgātŭs sum, 1 dep. v. n. *to wander, to roam about.*
vălĕo, -ērĕ, -ŭī, 2 v. n. *to be strong, to avail.*
Vălĕrĭŭs, -ī, m. see **Caburŭs**, **Flaccŭs** and **Prōcillŭs**.
vallum, -ī, n. *the wall* or *earthwork of a camp.*
Vangĭōnēs, -um, m. pl. *the Vangiones*, a German tribe.
vasto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to lay waste.*
vātĭcĭnātĭō, -ōnĭs, f. *prophecy.*
vectīgăl, -ālĭs, n. *an impost, tribute.*
vĕhĕmentĕr, adv. *strongly, violently.*
vĕho, -ĕre, vexī, vectum, 3 v. a. *to carry.*
vĕl, conj. *either, or.*
vēlox, -ōcĭs, adj. *swift;* **vēlōcissĭmŭs**, *swiftest.*
vĕlŭt, adv. *as though.*
vĕnĭo, -īrĕ, vēnī, ventum, 4 v. n. *to come;* impers. **ventum est**.
Verbĭgĕnŭs, -ī, m. *Verbigenus*, a canton of the Helvetii.
verbum, -ī, n. *a word.*
vĕrĕŏr, -ērī, vĕrĭtŭs sum, 2 dep. v. a. and n. *to be afraid, to fear.*
vergo, -ĕrĕ [no perf. or sup.] 3 v. n. *to slope.*
vergobretŭs, -ī, m. *dispenser of judgments*, a title of a Gallic magistrate.
vērō, adv. *truly, whereas.*
verso, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to turn about;* **versŏr**, *to be engaged.*
verto, -ĕrĕ, vertī, versum, 3 v. a. *to turn.*
Verucloetĭŭs, -ī, m. *Verucloetius*, a Helvetian noble.
vērŭs, -ă, -um, adj. *true.*
Vesontĭō, -ōnĭs, m. *Vesontio*, a town of the Sequani, mod. *Besançon.*
vespĕr, -ĕrī, m. *the evening.*
vĕtĕrānŭs, -ī, m. *a veteran*, a soldier who had been his full time in service [prob. adj. **vĕtĕrānŭs**, -ă, -um].

vĕtŭs, -ĕrĭs, adj. *old, ancient.*
vexo, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to harass, to annoy.*
VI, see **sex**.
vĭă, -ae, f. *a way, journey.*
victŏr, -ōrĭs, m. *a conqueror;* adj. *victorious.*
victōrĭă, -ae, f. *victory.*
victŭs, -ūs, m. *manner of life.*
vīcŭs, -ī, m. *a village, a canton.*
vĭdĕo, -ērĕ, vīdī, vīsum, 2 v. a. *to see;* **vĭdĕŏr**, *to seem;* **prō vīsō**, *as though seen.*
vĭgĭlĭă, -ae, f. *a watch.*
vīgintī, indecl. num. adj. *twenty.*
vincĭo, -īrĕ, vinxī, vinctum, 4 v. a. *to bind.*
vinco, -ĕrĕ, vīcī, victum, 3 v. a. *to conquer.*
vincŭlum (vinclum), -ī, n. *a chain;* **ex vincŭlīs**, *in chains.*
virtūs, -ūtĭs, f. *valour, virtue.*
vīs, vim, vī [no gen. or dat. sing.], f. *force, violence;* **pĕr vim**, *by main force, forcibly;* **vim făcĕrĕ**, *to offer violence, to do by force;* pl. **vīrēs**, -ĭum, *strength.*
vītă, -ae, f. *life.*
vīto, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to avoid.*
vix, adv. *scarcely.*
Voccĭō, -ōnĭs, m. *Voccio,* a German king.
vŏco, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to call, to summon, to name.*
Vocontĭī, -ōrum, m. pl. *the Vocontii,* a tribe between the Isère and the Durance.
volgō, adv. *commonly.*
volgŭs, -ī, n. *the common people, the crowd;* **in volgŭs efferrī**, *to be spread abroad.*
vŏlo, vellĕ, vŏlŭī, irreg. v. a. and n. *to be willing, to wish.*
vŏluntās, -ātĭs, f. *wish, will, good-will.*
vŏluptās, -ātĭs, f. *pleasure.*
vox, vōcĭs, f. *voice, speech.*
vulnĕro, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātum, 1 v. a. *to wound.*
vulnŭs, -ĕrĭs, n. *a wound.*
vultŭs, -ūs, m. *countenance, expression of face;* **vultum fingĕrĕ**, *to keep up appearances.*

X, see **dĕcem**.
XCII, see **nōnāgintā dŭŏ**.
XIIII, see **quattŭordĕcim**.
XV, see **quindĕcim**.
XVIII, see **octōdĕcim**.
XX, see **vīgintī**.
XXIII, see **vīgintī trēs**.
XXIIII, see **vīgintī quattŭŏr**.
XXXII, see **trīgintā dŭŏ**.
XXXVI, see **trīgintā sex**.

CAMBRIDGE: PRINTED BY J. & C. F. CLAY, AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

Cambridge Series for Schools and Training Colleges

This Series has been prepared in the conviction that text-books simple in style and arrangement, written by authors of standing, are called for to meet the needs of pupil-teachers and candidates for Certificates. Care is taken to combine a high standard of excellence with adaptation to the practical needs of those for whom the Series is especially intended. To this end the general Editorship of the Series has been entrusted to Mr W. H. Woodward, of Christ Church, Oxford, formerly Professor of Education in the University of Liverpool. At the same time, it is believed that most of the works comprised in the Series will be well suited to the needs of Secondary and Public Schools.

Caesar. Gallic War, I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VII. Edited, with introduction, notes and vocabulary, by E. S. Shuckburgh, Litt.D. 1*s*. 6*d*. each.

Cicero. In Catilinam I. Edited with introduction, notes and vocabulary, by J. H. Flather, M.A. 1*s*. 6*d*.

Ovid. Selections from the Tristia. Edited, with notes and vocabulary, by H. F. Morland Simpson, M.A., Rector of Aberdeen Grammar School. 1*s*. 6*d*.

Phaedrus. Fables I, II. Edited, with notes and vocabulary, by J. H. Flather, M.A. 1*s*. 6*d*.

Vergil. Aeneid I, II, III, V, VI, IX, X, XI and XII. Edited, with introduction, notes and vocabulary, by A. Sidgwick, M.A., Reader in Greek in the University of Oxford. 1*s*. 6*d*. each.

Xenophon. Anabasis, I, II, III, IV, V and VI. Edited, with introduction, notes and vocabulary, by G. M. Edwards, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge. 1*s*. 6*d*. each.

Gray. Ode on the Spring and The Bard. Edited by by D. C. Tovey, M.A. 8*d*.

Gray. Ode on the Spring and Elegy in a Country Churchyard. Edited by D. C. Tovey, M.A. 8*d*.

Macaulay. John Bunyan. Edited by Arthur D. Innes M.A. 1*s*.

Macaulay. John Milton. Edited by J. H. FLATHER, M.A. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Milton. Comus and Lycidas. Edited, with introduction notes, glossary and appendix, by A. W. VERITY, M.A. 2*s.*

A Short History of the Greeks, from the Earliest Times to B.C. 146. By EVELYN S. SHUCKBURGH, Litt.D. Crown 8vo. With numerous Maps, full-page and text illustrations. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Outlines of the History of the English Language. By T. N. TOLLER, M.A., Christ's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 4*s.*

A Short History of the Expansion of the British Empire. 1500—1902. By WILLIAM HARRISON WOODWARD. Second Edition, enlarged. Covering the Peace of Pretoria, 1902. Crown 8vo. With 10 Maps. Cloth, 4*s.*

An Outline History of the British Empire from 1500 to 1902. By WILLIAM HARRISON WOODWARD. With 6 Maps. 1*s.* 6*d.* net.

Geometrical Drawing. With Notes and Examples. By W. H. BLYTHE, M.A. Pt. I. Plane and Elementary Solid. 2*s.* 6*d.* Pt. II. Solid or Descriptive Geometry. 2*s.*

Geometry for Young Beginners. An introduction to Theoretical and Practical Geometry. By F. W. SANDERSON, M.A., Headmaster of Oundle School. 1*s.* 4*d.*

The Education of the Young, in the *Republic* of Plato, Translated into English, with notes and introduction, by BERNARD BOSANQUET, M.A., LL.D. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Aristotle on Education: being Extracts from the Ethics and Politics, translated and edited by JOHN BURNET, Professor of Greek in the United College of St Salvator and St Leonard, St Andrews. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

The Making of Character: some Educational Aspects of Ethics. By JOHN MACCUNN, M.A., LL.D., Professor of Philosophy in the University of Liverpool. Crown 8vo. Cloth, 2*s.* 6*d.* Cloth extra, gilt top, 3*s.* 6*d.*

Domestic Economy in Theory and Practice. A Text-book for Teachers and Students in Training, by MARION GREENWOOD BIDDER, of Newnham and Girton Colleges, and FLORENCE BADDELEY, Organising Secretary of the Gloucestershire School of Cookery and Domestic Economy. Crown 8vo. With several diagrams. 4*s.* 6*d.*

A Manual of School Hygiene, written for the guidance of Teachers in Day-schools. By EDWARD W. HOPE, M.D., Professor of Hygiene, University of Liverpool, and EDGAR A. BROWNE, F.R.C.S.E., Lecturer in Ophthalmology, University of Liverpool. Crown 8vo. With several diagrams. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Books suitable for

Board of Education Examinations

Preliminary Certificate, 1909

The Elements of English Grammar	A. S. West	2/6
The Cambridge School History of England	A. D. Innes	4/6
(also published in three parts at 2/- each)		
Arithmetic for Schools	C. Smith	3/6
(also published in two parts at 2/- each)		
A School Algebra Course (examples only)	F. Gorse	3/-
(also published in three parts at 1/- each)		
Euclid's Elements of Geometry		
Books I.—II.	H. M. Taylor	1/6
,, III.—IV.	,,	1/6
,, I.—IV.	,,	3/-
Elementary Geometry, Theoretical and Practical	C. Godfrey and A W. Siddons	3/6
(also published in 2 volumes, 2/- each; and in 5 parts, 1/- each)		
Plane Geometry	C. Davison and C. H. Richards	4/-

Certificate, 1909

Author	*Work*	*Editor*	*Price*
Bacon	Essays	A. S. West	3/6
Burke	Speeches on American Taxation and Conciliation with America	A. D. Innes	3/-
Cowley	Prose Works	J. R. Lumby	4/-
Gray	English Poems	D. C. Tovey	4/-
Milton	Arcades	A. W. Verity	1/6
,,	Comus and Lycidas	,,	2/-
,,	Paradise Lost, Books V.—VI.	,,	2/-
More	Utopia	J. R. Lumby	3/6
Shakespeare	Macbeth	A. W. Verity	1/6
,,	Hamlet	,,	3/-
,,	King Lear	,,	1/6
,,	Twelfth Night	,,	1/6
,,	A Midsummer-Night's Dream	,,	1/6
,,	As You Like It	,,	1/6

[*Turn over*

Certificate, 1909 Optional Subjects

Author	*Work*	*Editor*	*Price*
Milton	Samson Agonistes	A. W. Verity	2/6
,,	Paradise Lost. In 6 volumes	,,	*each* 2/-
,,	Arcades	,,	1/6
,,	Comus and Lycidas	,,	2/-
,,	Ode on the Nativity, L'Allegro, Il Penseroso, Lycidas	,,	2/6
,,	Sonnets	,,	1/6
Shakespeare	A Midsummer-Night's Dream	,,	1/6
,,	The Merchant of Venice	,,	1/6
,,	Twelfth Night	,,	1/6
,,	As You Like It	,,	1/6
,,	The Tempest	,,	1/6
,,	King Richard II.	,,	1/6
,,	King Henry V.	,,	1/6
,,	King Lear	,,	1/6
,,	Macbeth	,,	1/6
,,	Hamlet	,,	3/-

Acting Teachers' Certificate, 1909

Author	*Work*	*Editor*	*Price*
Shakespeare	The Merchant of Venice	A. W. Verity	1/6
More	Utopia	J. R. Lumby	3/6

☞ *Complete Catalogues of the Publications of the Cambridge University Press will be sent on application.*

Any book published by the Cambridge University Press may be inspected at the Press Warehouse in Fetter Lane, London, E.C. A Complete Library of the publications of the Press has been formed there for this purpose and visitors will be welcome.

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE.
C. F. CLAY, Manager,
London: FETTER LANE.
Edinburgh: 100, PRINCES STREET.